HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 5008

PEUGEOT

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook on the PEUGEOT website, under "MyPEUGEOT".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Flash this code for direct access to your handbook.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



If the "MyPEUGEOT" function is not available on the PEUGEOT public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Welcome

This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Thank you for choosing a 5008.

This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of using your vehicle in all circumstances.

Key

! safety warning

i additional information

contributes to the protection of the environment

Overview

Eco-driving

1 Monitoring

Instrument panels 14
Indicator and warning lamps 16
Indicators 27
Distance recorders 31
Screen A without audio equipment 32
Screen A with audio equipment 34
Screen C (PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5)) 36
16/9 retractable colour screen (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)) 39
Trip computer 42

2 Access

Remote control key 46
Alarm 51
Electric windows 53
Doors 55
Boot 58

3 Comfort

Heating and Ventilation 60
Manual air conditioning 62
Rear screen demist - defrost 64
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 65
Front seats 68
Rear seats, 2nd row 73
Access to the 3rd row 75
Rear seats, 3rd row 76
Seat modularity 78
Mirrors 79
Steering wheel adjustment 81

4 Visibility

Lighting controls 82
Daytime running lamps 86
Automatic illumination of headlamps 87
Headlamp beam adjustment 89
Directional lighting 90
Wiper controls 91
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 94
Courtesy lamps 96
Interior mood lighting 97

5 Fittings

Interior fittings 99
Centre console 101
Rear multimedia 104
Panoramic sunroof 106
Boot fittings 5-seat version 108
Boot fittings 7-seat version 109

6 Child safety

Child seats 115
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 117
ISOFIX mountings 127
Child lock 134

7 Safety

Direction indicators 135
Hazard warning lamps 135
Horn 135
ESC system 136
Front seat belts 139
Airbags 143

8 Driving

Driving recommendations 147
Starting-switching off the engine 148
Electric parking brake 151
Hill start assist 155
Head-up display 158
Distance alert 160
Speed limiter 163
Cruise control 166
Manual gearbox 169
Electronic gearbox 170
Automatic gearbox 175
Gear shift indicator 179
Stop & Start 180
Tyre under-inflation detection 183
Parking sensors 185
Reversing camera 187
Parking space sensors 188

9 Checks

Fuel tank 191
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 194
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 195
Opening the bonnet 196
Underbonnet - petrol engines 197
Underbonnet - Diesel engines 198
Checking levels 199
Checks 202
AdBlue® additive and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 204

10 Practical information

Tool kit 212
Temporary puncture repair kit 214
Changing a wheel 223
Snow chains 230
Changing a bulb 231
Changing a fuse 237
12 V battery 244
Energy economy mode 247
Changing a wiper blade 248
Towing the vehicle 248
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 250
Towing a trailer 252
Fitting roof bars 254
Very cold climate screen 255
Accessories 256

11 Technical data

Petrol engines 258
Petrol weights 259
Diesel engines 261
Diesel weights 263
Dimensions 267
Identification markings 268

Audio equipment and telematics

Emergency or assistance 270
PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6) 273
PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) 329

Alphabetical index

Exterior



Remote control key 46-50, 148-150
- unlocking / locking
- locating the vehicle
- battery
- anti-theft protection
- starting

Wiper 91-95
Changing a wiper blade 95, 248
Demisting-defrosting the rear screen 64

Boot 58-59
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Changing a wheel 226-231
Spare wheel 223-229

Fuel tank 191-193
Misfuel prevention 194

Parking sensors 185-186
Reversing camera 187
Parking space sensors 188-189
Towball (quickly detachable) 250-251
Towing 248-249
Towbar 252-253

Accessories 256-257
Roof bars, finishers 254
Panoramic sunroof 106-107

Changing rear bulbs 234-236
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps
- foglamps

Door mirrors 79

Exterior welcome lighting 88
Door mirror spotlamps 97
Exterior (lighting, automatic, directional) 87, 90
Headlamp beam height adjustment 89
Changing bulbs 231-233
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Very cold climate screen 255

ESC, ABS, EBFD, EBA, ASR, DSC 136-138
ITC (traction on snow) 136
Tyre under-inflation detection 183-184
Tyre pressures 183, 219, 268
Snow chains 230

Doors 55-57
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm 51-52
Electric windows 53-54

Interior

Boot fittings 108-114
- load space roller cover
- high load retaining net
- luggage retaining net
- hooks
- 12 V accessory socket
- storage box

Boot lamp 98

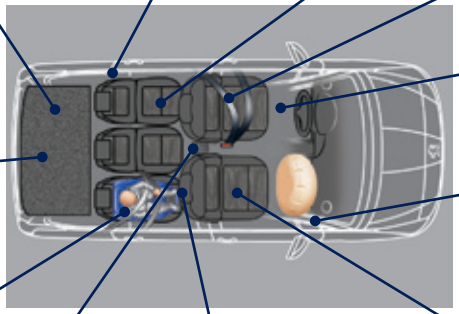
Temporary puncture repair kit 214-223
Tool kit 212-213
Access to the AdBlue® tank 209-211

Rear seats, 2nd row 73-75
Rigid panel 75
Access to the 3rd row 75
Rear seats, 3rd row 76-77



Rear multimedia 104-105

Side blinds 114



Aircraft style table 103
Storage compartments under the footwells 103

Conventional child seats 115-126
ISOFIX child seats 127-133
Child lock 134

Seat belts 139-142

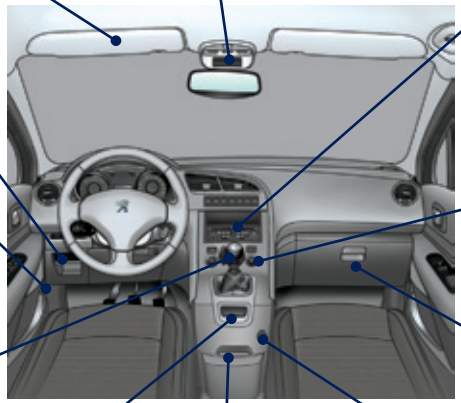
Mats 102
Storage drawer 103

Airbags 143-146
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 117, 144

Front seats 68-71
- manual
- electric
- head restraints
- lumbar
- heated

Seat in table position, transporting long objects 72

Instruments and controls



Courtesy lamps 96, 97
Seat belt / passenger's front airbag warning lamps display 140-141, 144
Rear view mirror 80

Sun visor 100

Dashboard fuses 237-240

Opening the bonnet 196

6-speed manual gearbox 169
Gear shift indicator 179
Electronic gearbox 170-174
Automatic gearbox 175-178
Stop & Start 180-182
Hill start assist 155
Eco-driving 12-13

Electric parking brake 151-154, 156-157

PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6) 273-327
Setting the date/time 40

PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) 329-349
Setting the date/time 35, 38

Setting the date/time (without audio system) 33

Ventilation 60-61
Rear ventilation 61
Manual air conditioning 62-63
Digital air conditioning 65-67
Demisting-defrosting the rear screen 64

Interior fittings 99-100, 102
- sun visor
- driver's storage compartments
- glove box
- mat

12 V accessory socket 102

Centre console 101
PEUGEOT Connect USB 101, 310, 336

Instruments and controls

Instrument panels, screens 14-16
Warning lamps 16-26
Indicators 27-31
Gear shift indicator 179
Buttons 29, 31
- check / service indicator / trip distance recorder
- lighting dimmer

Head-up display 158-159
Distance alert 160-162

Lighting controls 82-87
Direction indicators 135

Speed limiter 163-165
Cruise control 166-168

Switch panel 8-10
Stop & Start 180-182

Door mirrors 79
Electric windows, deactivating 53-54

Headlamp beam height adjustment 89

Multifunction screens 32-40
- Screen A
- Screen C
- 16/9 colour screen

Retractable screen 41
Emergency or assistance call 270-271

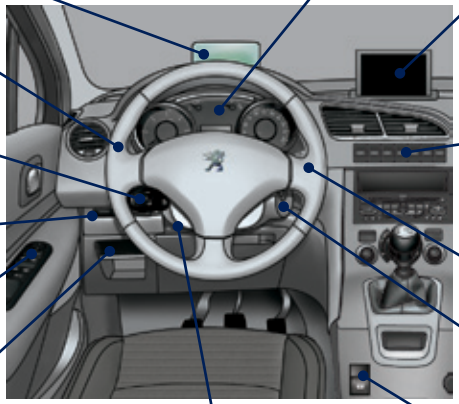
Centre switch panel 8-10
Hazard warning lamps 135
Head-up display 158-159
Distance alert 160-162

Wiper controls 91-95
Trip computer 42-45

Ignition switch, starting-switching off 148-150

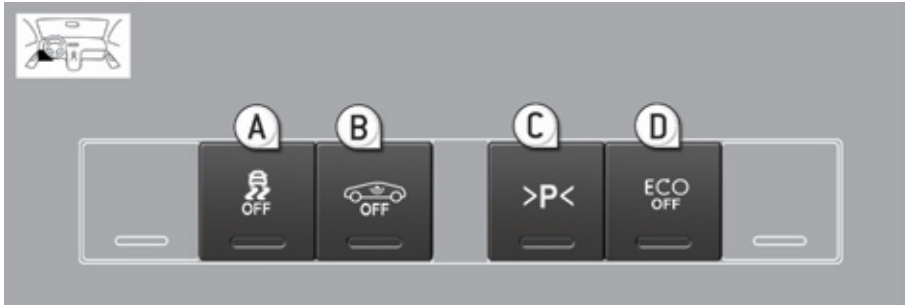
Panoramic sunroof 106-107

Steering wheel adjustment 81
Horn 135



Switch panel

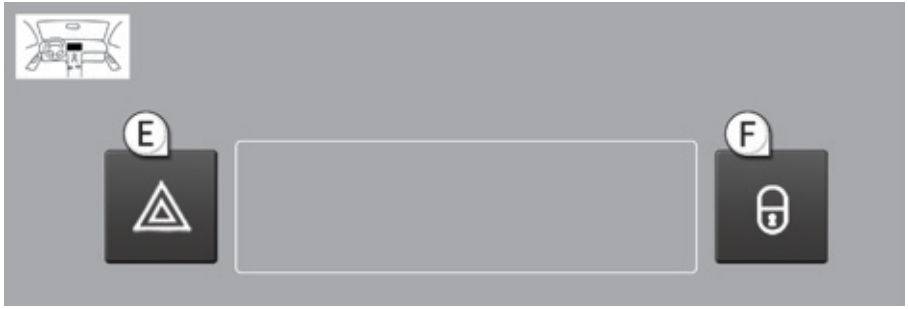
Version 1



Side

The illumination of the indicator lamp shows the state of the corresponding function.

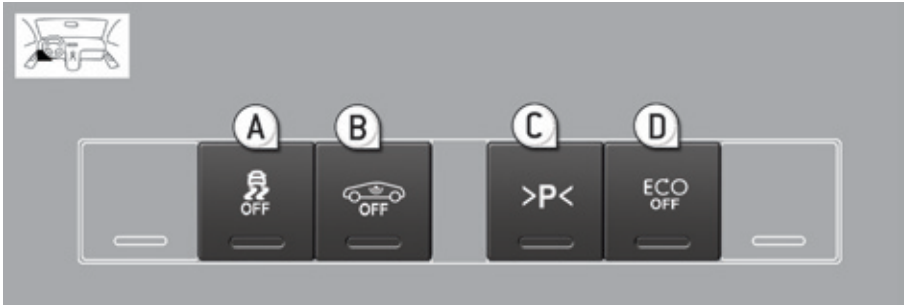
A.	ASR/DSC OFF.	136-138
B.	Volumetric alarm.	51-52
C.	Parking space measurement.	188-189
D.	Stop & Start.	180-182



Centre

E.	Hazard warning lamps.	135
F.	Central locking.	56-57

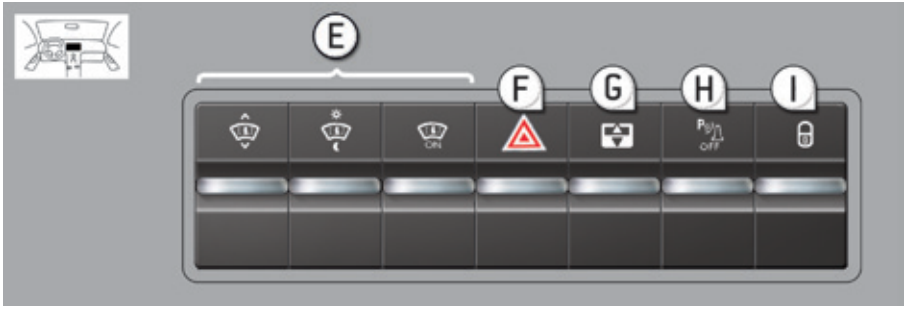
Version 2



Side

The illumination of the indicator lamp shows the state of the corresponding function.

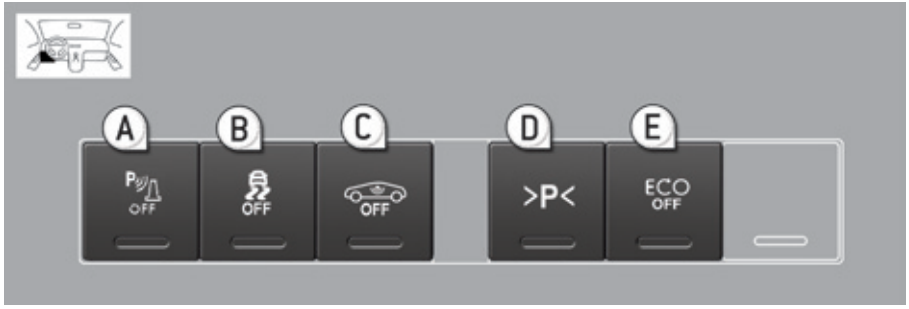
A.	ASR/DSC OFF.	136-138
B.	Volumetric alarm.	51-52
C.	Parking space measurement.	188-189
D.	Stop & Start.	180-182



Centre

E.	Head-up display.	158-159
F.	Hazard warning lamps.	135
G.	Blind.	106-107
H.	Visual and audible parking assistance.	185-186
I.	Central locking.	56-57

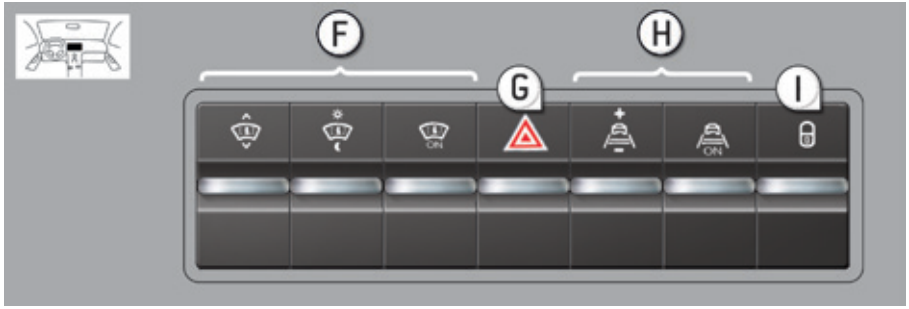
Version 3



Side

The illumination of the indicator lamp shows the state of the corresponding function.

A.	Visual and audible parking assistance.	185-186
B.	ASR/DSC OFF.	136-138
C.	Volumetric alarm.	51-52
D.	Parking space measurement.	188-189
E.	Stop & Start.	180-182



Centre

F.	Head-up display.	158-159
G.	Hazard warning lamps.	135
H.	Distance alert.	160-162
I.	Central locking.	56-57

Maintenance - Technical data

AdBlue® and SCR system 204-211
Running out of fuel, Diesel 195

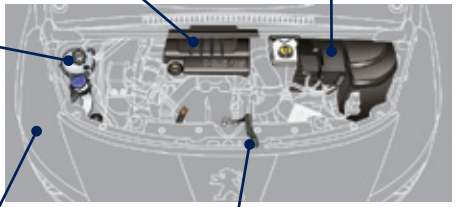
Checking levels 199-201
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

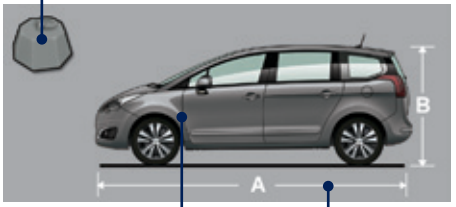
Checking components 202-203
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- brake pads / discs

Changing bulbs 231-236
- front
- rear

12 V battery 244-246
Load reduction, economy mode 247
Engine compartment fuses 237, 241-243

Petrol weights 259
Petrol weights, LCV 260
Diesel weights 263-265
Diesel weights - LCV 266





Identification markings 268

Opening the bonnet 196
Under the bonnet, petrol 197
Under the bonnet, Diesel 198
Petrol engines 258
Diesel engines 261-262

Dimensions 267

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting ; go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panels

Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.



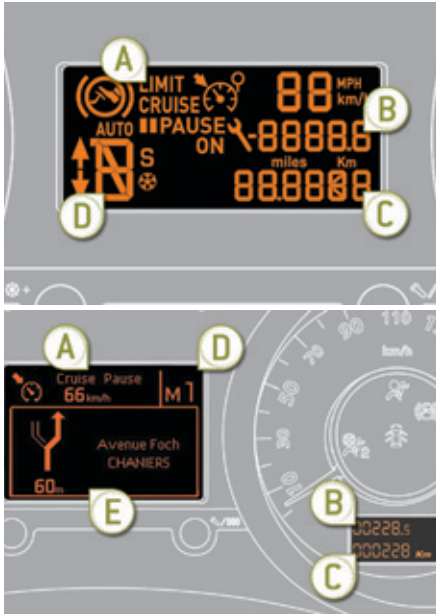


Instruments

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the engine speed (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature gauge.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Speedometer.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Screen.**
6. **Control switch.**
   Temporary display of the service indicator and driving range with the AdBlue® additive.
   Display and reset the selected function (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
7. **Instrument panel lighting dimmer.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls, if the vehicle lighting is on.

For more information, refer to the section corresponding to the button or function and its associated display.

Screen(s)



A. Speed limiter
or
Cruise control.
(mph or km/h)

B. Trip distance recorder.
(miles or km)

C. Service indicator.
(miles or km) or,
Engine oil level indicator (depending on version).
or
distance recorder.
(miles or km)

D. Gear shift indicator.
Electronic or automatic gearbox.

E. Warning messages and function status messages, trip computer, GPS navigation information.

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.
Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two different modes. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric parking brake control lever. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
AUTO P OFF	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (depending on the country of sale) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Foot on the brake pedal**	fixed.	The brake pedal is not pressed.	You must press the brake pedal firmly to: - start the engine with an electronic gearbox (lever in position **N**), - manually release the parking brake.
		flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the electric parking brake.
	**Parking space sensors**	fixed.	The parking space sensors function is active.	Press the corresponding button to deactivate it.
		flashing.	The system is measuring the space.	Once the measurement has been done, the warning lamp comes on fixed again.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the operation of the airbags (Airbag warning lamp on).	Set the control to the **ON** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the multifunction screen.
If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Service**	on temporarily.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: - opening of the doors, boot or bonnet, - engine oil low level, - screenwash low level, - flat remote control battery, - saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp goes off. - a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, - ... For any other faults, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown on the screen and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position **P** for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	**Low fuel level**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA	**AdBlue® additive (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® additive tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
+ SERVICE		flashing associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank to **avoid a breakdown**: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank.

For topping-up or for more information on the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

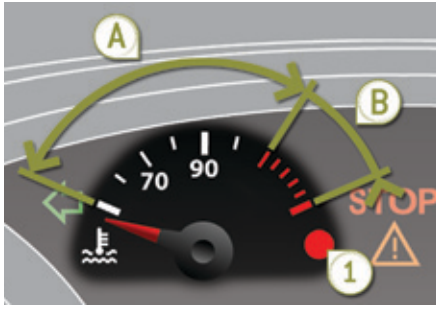
Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA + SERVICE + 	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge***	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Door(s) open**	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the lower tailgate or the bonnet (with alarm only) is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	**Front seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed then flashing accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	Rear seat belt not fastened / unfastened	fixed then flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	One or more rear passengers have unfastened their seat belt.	

* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Airbags**	temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Water in Diesel**	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the max temperature warning lamp **1** and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

Service indicator



System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.
The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset, according to the mileage covered since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, depending on the country of sale, the level of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account.

More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 186 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



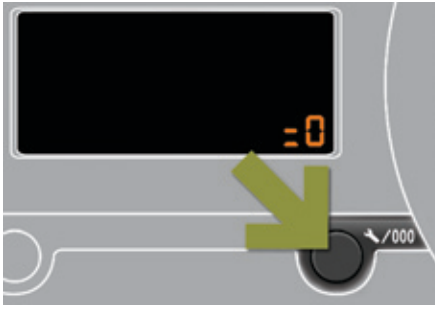
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**



With BlueHDi Diesel versions, the **Service** warning lamp also comes on when the ignition is switched on.

For BlueHDi versions, the spanner may also come on early, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

Resetting the service indicator



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder zero reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator*

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.



The level shown will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level low



This is signalled by the flashing of **"OIL"**, or the display of a message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel, accompanied by illumination of the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to prevent damage to the engine.
Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the flashing of **"OIL--"** or the display of a message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the engine oil level is no longer monitored. When the system has a fault, you should check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick (located under the bonnet).

Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

* Depending on version.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

> When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

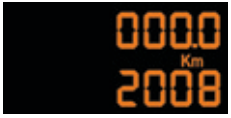
Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel in relation to the exterior brightness.



Operation

When the vehicle lighting is on:

☞ press the button to change the brightness of the instrument panel,

☞ when the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it,

or

☞ when the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it,

☞ when the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

> When the vehicle lighting is on, you cannot switch the instrument panel lighting off but you can adjust it to minimum.

Dimmer deactivated

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

Monochrome screen A (without audio equipment)

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:
- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- alert messages,
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. Some can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

Controls



There are three display control buttons:
- **"ESC"** to abandon the operation in progress,
- **"MENU"** to scroll through the menus or sub-menus,
- **"OK"** to select the menu or sub-menu required.

Main menu



☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to scroll through the various menus of the **main menu**:
- vehicle configuration,
- options,
- display settings,
- languages,
- units.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

* With air conditioning only.

Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- "guide-me-home" lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic parking brake** (refer to the "Driving" section),
- parking space sensors (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Date and time

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the **"OK"** button to change its value.



☞ Wait for approximately ten seconds without any action to allow the changed data to be recorded or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

The screen then returns to the normal display.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units for:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

** Depending on the country of sale.

Monochrome screen A (with audio equipment)

Displays in the screen



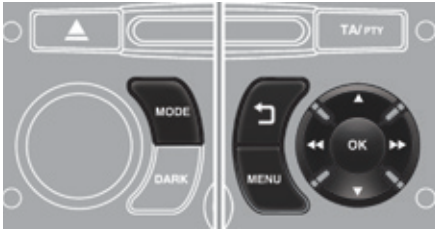
This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- alert messages,
- audio sources (radio, CD, ...),
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. Some can be cleared by pressing the **"] arrow"** button.

* With air conditioning only.

Controls



From the audio equipment control panel, you can:

- ☞ press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source, ...),
- ☞ press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ press the **"OK"** button to confirm, or



- ☞ press this button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - radio-CD,
  - vehicle configuration,
  - options,
  - display settings,
  - languages,
  - units.
- ☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio-CD

With the audio equipment switched on, once the "Radio-CD" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG), the CD or the CD changer (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).

! For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle Configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic parking brake** (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Date and time

Once the "DATE AND TIME" menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"↰] arrow"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display.

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

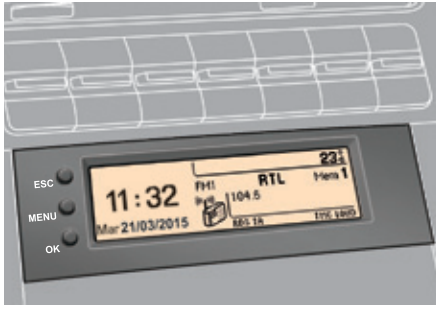
- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

** Depending on the country of sale.

Monochrome screen C (with PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5))

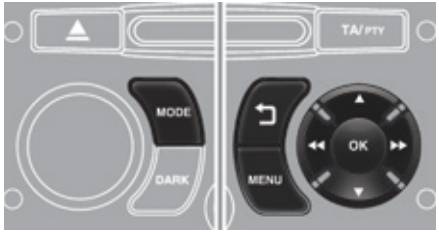
Displays in the screen



Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- audio functions,
- trip computer (see the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- screen and vehicle equipment parameter setting menus.

Controls



From the audio equipment control panel, you can:

- press the "**MENU**" button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the "**MODE**" button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the "**OK**" button to confirm, or



- press this button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - trip computer (see the corresponding section),
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (Bluetooth system).
- Press the"▲" or "▼" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the "**OK**" button.



"Audio functions" menu

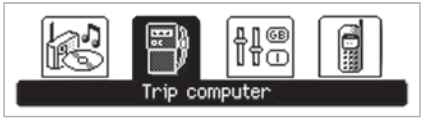
With the audio equipment switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText) or CD (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).

For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) section.

"Trip computer" menu

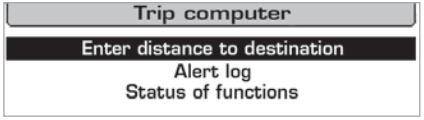
Once this menu has been selected, you can consult information concerning the status of the vehicle (alert log, status of the functions...).

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the general menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.



- ☞ In the **"Trip computer"** menu, select one of the applications.

Enter the distance to the destination



This allows you to enter an approximate value for the distance to the final destination.

Alert log

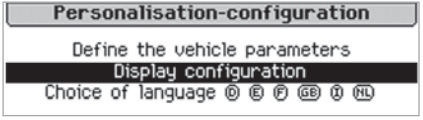
This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen

Status of functions

This summarises the status of the functions present on the vehicle.

* Depending on the country of sale.

"Personalisation-Configuration" menu



Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

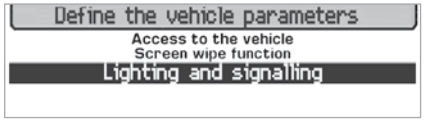
Define the vehicle parameters

Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic parking brake* (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Example: setting of the duration of the guide-me-home lighting.

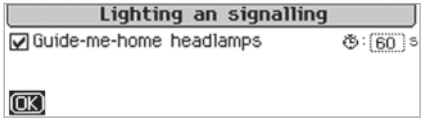
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the menu required.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the "**] arrow**" button to cancel.

Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- selection of the units.

Adjusting the date and time

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the "Display configuration" menu, then the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, to select the "Adjust date and time" line, then on the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button then adjust the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm, or the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the screen display language.



"Telephone" menu

With the audio equipment switched on, once this menu has been selected you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free kit (pairing), consult the various telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your communications (accept call, end call, call on hold, secret mode...).

For more information on the telephone application, refer to the PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) section.

As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

16/9 retractable colour screen (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6))

Displays in the screen



Depending on the context, it displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- parking space measurement,
- audio functions,
- directory and telephone information,
- satellite navigation system information,
- settings menus for the screen, the satellite navigation system and vehicle systems.
- the image from the reversing camera.

Controls



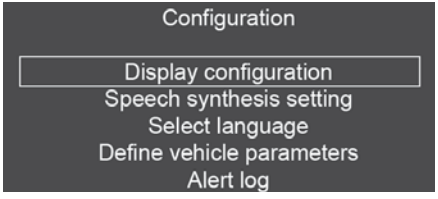
From the navigation system control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"PHONE"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn the dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,
- ☞ press button **B** to confirm the selection, or
- ☞ press the **"Back"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

With repeated presses on the **C "MODE"** button, the screen displays:

- "RADIO / MEDIA"*,
- "TELEPHONE"*,
- "FULL SCREEN MAP"*,
- "MAP IN A WINDOW"*,

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to open the configuration menu:

- "Display configuration",
- "Speech synthesis setting".
- "Select language",
- "Define vehicle parameters",
- "Alert log".

For the operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjusting the position...), refer to the "Access to the retractable screen" section.

As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Display configuration

This menu is used to select the colour scheme for the screen, adjust the brightness, set the date and time and to choose the units for distance (km or miles), fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l) and temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit).

Adjusting the date and time

- Press on **SETUP**.
- Select "Display configuration" and confirm.
- Select "Set date and time" and confirm.

Select "Minute adjustment via GPS" so that the minutes are adjusted automatically by satellite reception.

- Select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing on **OK**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.
- Adjust the settings one by one.
- Select "**OK**" in the screen then confirm to save the setting.

Adjusting the voice synthesiser

This menu is used to adjust the volume setting for navigation instructions and to choose the type of voice (male or female).

Choice of language

This menu is used to choose the language used by the screen from a defined list.

Vehicle parameters

This menu is used to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort systems, classified by category:

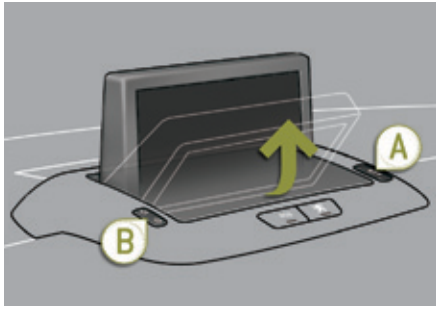
- "Driver aid":
  - "Electric brake*" (Automatic electric parking brake; refer to the "Driving" section),
- "Wiper operation":
  - "**Rear wiper operates in reverse: ON / OFF**" (rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "Vehicle access" (refer to the "Access" section):
  - "**Plip action: all doors, driver only**" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
- "**Lighting configuration**" (refer to the "Visibility" section):
  - "**Duration of guide me home lighting: OFF / 15 s / 30 s / 60 s**" (Automatic guide me home lighting),
  - "Directional headlights: **ON / OFF**" (Main / additional directional lighting).

Alert log

This lists the active alerts by displaying in turn the different messages associated with them.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Access to the retractable screen



The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on. It closes automatically three seconds after switching off the ignition if the audio and telematics system is switched off.

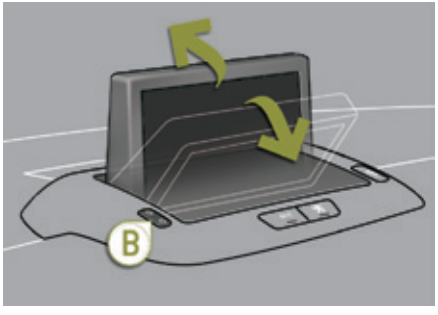
You can open or close the screen at any time, with the ignition on, using control **A**.

- Press button **A**: the screen folds.
- Press button **A** again: the screen opens again.

If you have closed the screen, it will open again automatically:

- on switching on the audio and navigation system (unless it had been closed manually while the system was in operation),
- when an outgoing telephone call is made,
- when a voice command is given,
- when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is displayed (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)).

Adjusting the angle of the screen



You can adjust the angle of the screen to one of four defined positions, by repeated presses on the front or back of the control **B**. The position of the screen is memorised on closing.

Trip computer

A few definitions



Range

(miles or km)
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated since the last trip reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip reset.



Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip reset.



Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

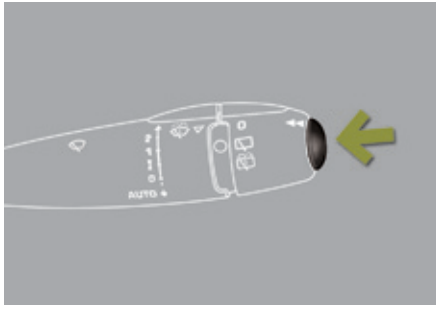
Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen A



Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer information in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- Stop & Start time counter,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,

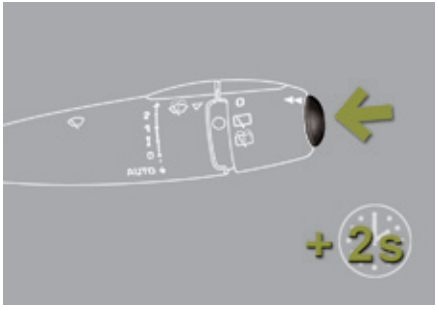


- average speed.



☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

Trip reset



☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

Trip computer

System which provides instantaneous information on the current trip (range, fuel consumption…).

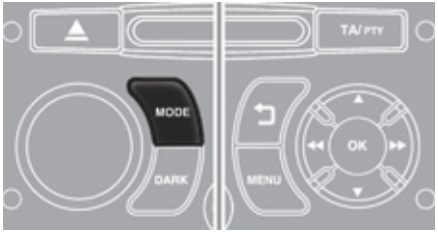
Monochrome screen C



Instrument panel screen



Information displays



With screen C

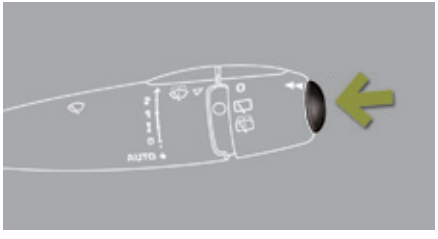
☞ Press the PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) **"MODE"** button repeatedly to display the trip comuter information.

Then, repeatedly press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display each of the trip computer tabs in turn.

Or

☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to temporarily display a window with the trip computer information.

Then, repeatedly press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display each of the trip computer tabs in turn.



With instrument panel screen

☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display each of the trip computer tabs in turn.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the trip computer information appears in the monochrome C screen or in the instrument panel screen.

- The current information with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the distance remaining to be travelled or the Stop & Start time counter.

- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the average speed, for the first trip,
  - the average fuel consumption,

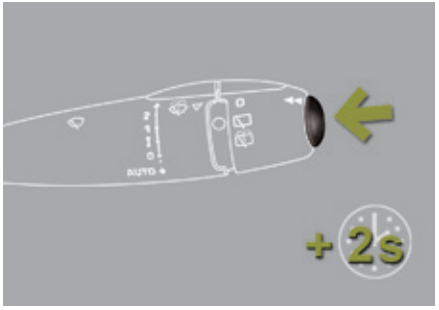
- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the average speed, for the second trip,
  - the average fuel consumption,

With the instrument panel screen

- A black screen.
- A reminder of the navigation instructions with the PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6) system.

Press again to return to the current display.

Trip reset



With the C screen or instrument panel screen

☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds.

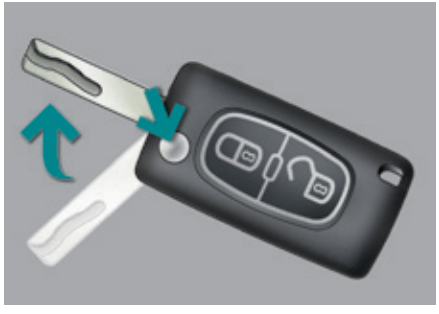
Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle



Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Complete unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Selective unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The selective unlocking is only available on versions fitted with deadlocking.



The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on and the alarm is deactivated.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

ℹ The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold at the same time, and when locking using the remote control only, the alarm is activated.

ℹ If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action then on the doors or boot, it will relock automatically after about thirty seconds.
If the alarm had been activated previously, it will not be reactivated automatically.

ℹ The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

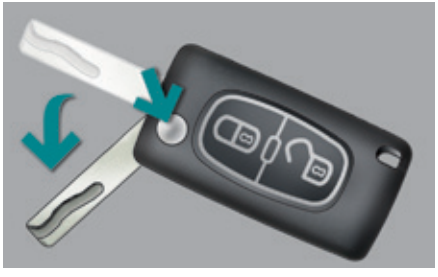
Deadlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).
- ☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

! According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.
Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Folding the key





☞ First press this button to fold the key.

i If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in low light. Your vehicle must be locked.

This will cause illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control fault you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

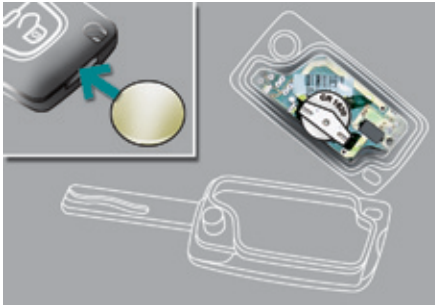
Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

! If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.
In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Alarm

System which protects and provides a deterrent against the theft of your vehicle. It provides two types of protection, exterior and interior, as well as an anti-tamper function.

Exterior perimiter protection

The system detects opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to enter the vehicle by forcing a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric protection

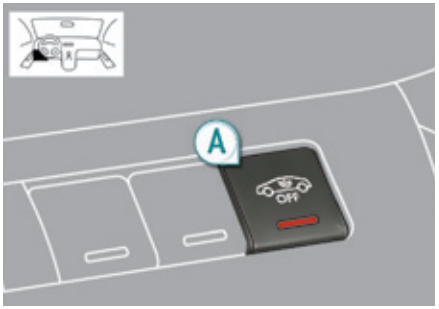
The system detects any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or moves inside the vehicle.
If you wish to leave a pet in the vehicle or a window partially open, deactivate the interior volumetric protection.

Anti-tamper function

The system detects the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to put the wires of the siren, the central control or the battery out of service.

! Do not make any modifications to the alarm system, this could cause malfunctions.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm



Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The alarm is activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

i If a door, the boot or the bonnet is not fully closed, the vehicle is then not locked, but perimeter monitoring will be active after a period of 45 seconds, at the same time as the volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm is deactivated; the indicator lamp in button **A** switches off.

i In the event of automatic relocking of the vehicle (occurs after an unintentional unlocking followed by a period of 30 seconds without opening a door or the boot), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically. To reactivate the system, it is necessary to unlock the vehicle and then lock it again using the key or the remote control.

Locking the vehicle with exterior protection alarm only

Deactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press button **A** until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The exterior protection alarm alone remains activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

i To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.
- ☞ Relock the vehicle using the remote control.

The alarm is activated again with both types of protection; the indicator lamp in button **A** switches off.

Triggering

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for approximately thirty seconds.
After it has been triggered, the alarm is again operational.

! If the alarm is triggered ten times in succession, the eleventh time will result in it becoming inactive.
If the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes rapidly, this indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.
To avoid triggering the alarm when washing your vehicle, lock it using the key in the driver's door lock.
Do not activate the alarm before disconnecting the battery, otherwise the siren will sound.

Failure of the remote control

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

The direction indicators do not come on.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, illumination the indicator lamp in button **A** for ten seconds indicates a siren fault.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic operation*

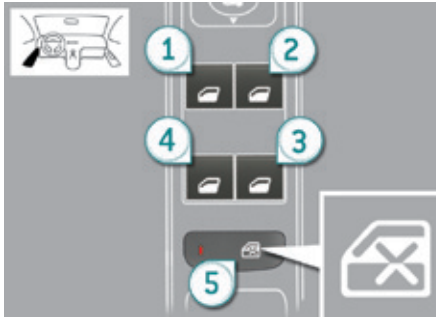
Depending on the legislation in force in your country, one of these cases may occur:

- 45 seconds after the vehicle is locked using the remote control, the alarm is activated, regardless of the status of the doors and boot.
- 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the alarm is activated.
  - ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Electric windows

System for opening or closing a window manually or automatically. Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a system for deactivation in the event of misuse of the rear controls.



1. **Front left**
2. **Front right**
3. **Rear right**
4. **Rear left**
5. **Deactivation of the rear controls for the rear electric windows or deactivation of the rear controls for the rear electric windows and the rear doors (version with electric child lock)**

One-touch electric windows

Manual mode

☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

Automatic mode

☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.

☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

ℹ The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a front door is opened.
If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control pad of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

! After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated to prevent damage to the electric window motor.
After this, you have approximately one minute in which to close the window.
Once the window is closed, the controls will become operational again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

ℹ If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

☞ Press and hold the control until the window opens fully.

☞ Then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes.

☞ Continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

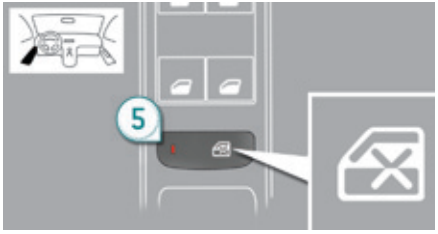
Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically or following disconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised:
For each window:

- ☞ Pull the control until the window stops.
- ☞ Release the control and pull it again.
- ☞ Repeat these operations until the window closes fully.
- ☞ Continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.
- ☞ Press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position.
- ☞ Once the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric windows



- ☞ For the safety of your children, with the ignition on, press control **5** to deactivate the rear controls for the rear electric windows. Only the driver can then operates the rear electric windows, regardless of their position.

It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.
Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

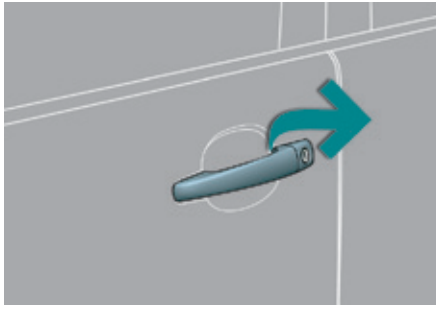
For versions fitted with electric child lock, this control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors; see the "Child lock" section.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.
Before operating the passengers' electric windows, the driver must ensure that there is nothing and no one preventing the correct closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Doors

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

With selective unlocking, pull the driver's door handle.

From inside



☞ Pull the door control (front or rear) to open the door; this unlocks this vehicle completely.

! The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door or the boot is not closed correctly:

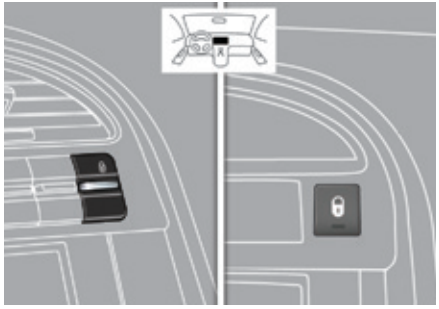


- when the engine is running and at speed of up to 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message,
- when the speed of the vehicle is above 6 mph (10 km/h), this alert is accompanied by an audible signal.

Central locking

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors from the inside.

Manual central locking



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

When locking / deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

☞ After normal locking, pull the interior door lever to unlock the vehicle.

☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and boot while driving. You can activate or deactivate this function.

Activation



☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

! A confirmation message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

Automatic locking

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and boot lock automatically.
If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.
If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press this button to unlock the doors and boot temporarily.

! In the event of an impact, the doors unlock automatically.

Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

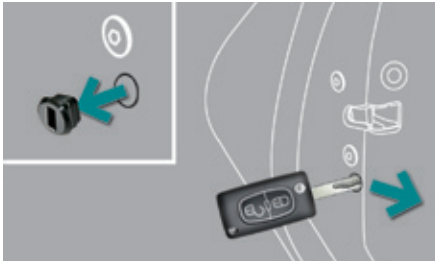
☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



☞ Open the doors.
☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see the corresponding section).
☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Boot

Opening



☞ After unlocking the vehicle, pull the handle and raise the tailgate.

Closing



☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

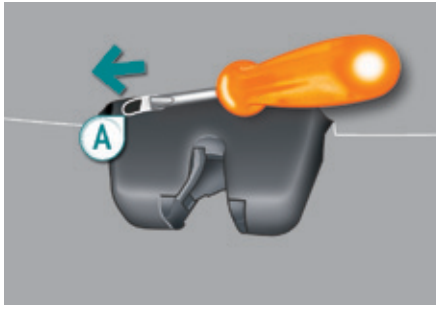
If the tailgate or one of the doors is not closed correctly:



- when the engine is running and at speed of up to 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message,
- when the speed of the vehicle is above 6 mph (10 km/h), this alert is accompanied by an audible signal.

When selective unlocking is activated, the boot can also be opened by a second press on the open padlock on the remote control.

Tailgate release



System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.

Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Heating and Ventilation

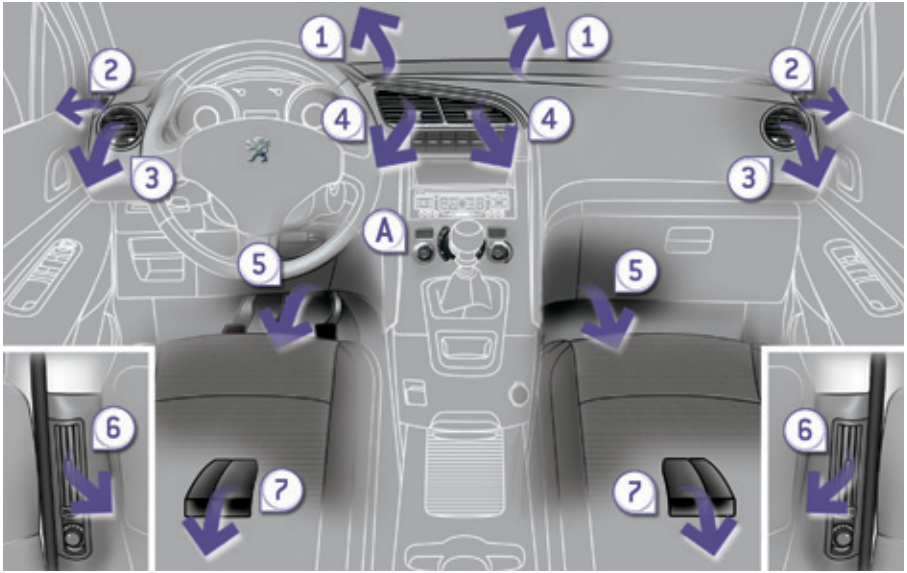
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger and rear passengers, according to the level of equipment.
The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.
The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.
These controls are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.



Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Adjustable air vents for the rear passengers.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- If the interior temperature remains very high after the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a considerable time, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few minutes. Place the air flow control at a sufficient level to provide an adequate renewal of air in the passenger compartment.
- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- In normal conditions, use the intake of exterior air as prolonged use of the air recirculation may cause misting of the windows and side windows.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its second special active filter, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- The air conditioning uses power from the engine while operating. This results in an increase in the vehicle's fuel consumption.
  When towing at or near maximum capacity or on steep slopes in high ambient temperatures, switching off the air conditioning saves engine power and so improves towing capacity.
  Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle when stationary, which is perfectly normal.
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly.
- If the system does not produce cold air, do not use it and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

Rear ventilation adjustment



After pressing the "REAR" button, turn the adjustment dial of the rear side vents to decrease or increase the flow of air.
Take care not to obstruct the side vents and the air outlets on the floor.
To shut off the flow of air, close the vents and set the dial to 0.

Manual air conditioning



The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

> ☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0** (deactivation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and front-rear footwells.



Footwells, front-rear
(closing the vents increases the flow to the footwells).



Central, side and rear vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air limits misting of the windscreen and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air insulates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.
Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the air quality and demisting performance.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

Demisting/defrosting





The marking on the control panel indicates the position of the controls to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows:

- ☞ place the air intake control **4** in the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp off),
- ☞ place the air distribution dial **3** in the "Windscreen position",
- ☞ place the air flow dial **2** in position 5 (maximum),
- ☞ place the temperature dial **1** in the red position (hot).

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

- ☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".
To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

- ☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

Rear screen demist - defrost



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demist/defrost switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demist/defrost operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

☞ Switch off the demist/defrost of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning only operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation



1. Automatic comfort programme



☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

We recommend the use of this mode: it permits automatic and optimised adjustment of all of the functions, passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.
This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

i When the engine is cold, to prevent too great a distribution of cold air, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

2-3. Driver-passenger side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

i On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required more quickly. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

4. Automatic visibility programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

☞ In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To switch it off, press the **"visibility"** button again or press the **"AUTO"** button, the indicator lamp in the button goes off or the indicator lamp on the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** (low) is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** (high) is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp in the **"A/C"** button comes on.

To obtain cool air sooner, you can use air recirculation for a few moments. Then return to exterior air intake.

In winter, we recommend that you close the rear vents.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, the side windows and the vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the vents and the footwells,
- the vents and the footwells,
- the vents,
- the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively according to the value requested.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

8. Air recirculation



☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on.



- Air closed/intake (automatic mode). Press this button, the warning lamp comes on.



- Forced closing of the air intake (manual mode). Press this button to recirculate the interior air, the warning lamp come on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press the "auto" button to allow the intake of exterior air and avoid the misting of windows.

9. Rear ventilation (Rear)



☞ Press this button to allow the air to circulate towards the rear. The temperature will be equal to the left-hand comfort value for the rear left passengers and equal to the right-hand comfort value for the rear right passengers. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Switching the system off/on

☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.

Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Turn the air flow dial to the right or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

! Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the system off.

Front seats with manual adjustments

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Forwards-backwards

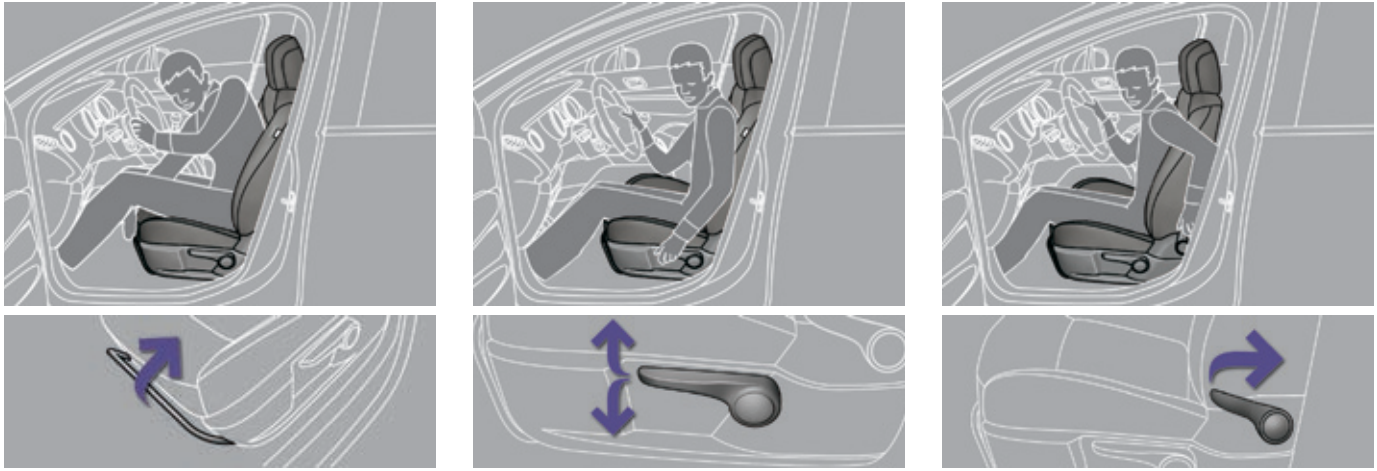
☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required, to obtain the position required.

Backrest angle

☞ Push the control rearwards.



! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Driver's electric seat

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

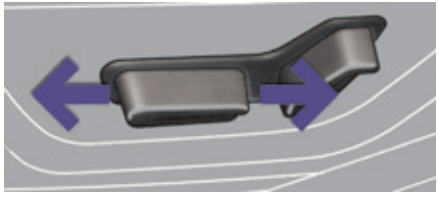
Backrest angle

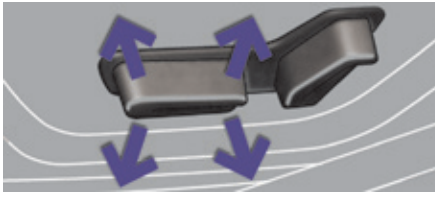
☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat back.

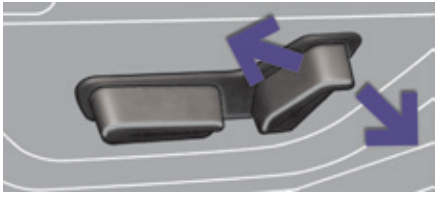








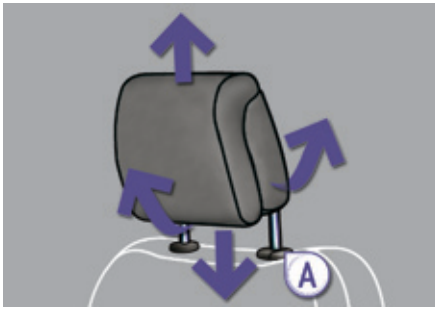




The electric functions of the driver's seat are active for approximately one minute after opening the front door.
They are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off and in economy mode.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

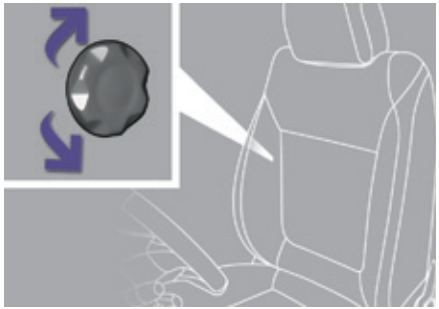
Head restraint height and angle adjustment



- To raise the head restraint, pull it forwards and upwards at the same time.
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Before moving off, check the adjustment of the head restraint; adjust it if the seat has been occupied by someone of different size.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Manual lumbar adjustment



☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Heated seats control

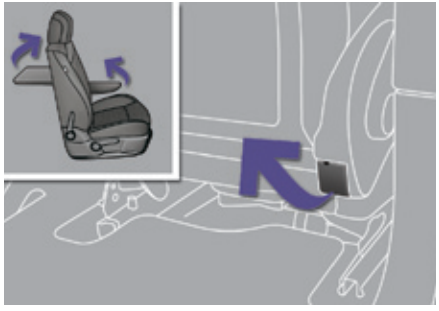


With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

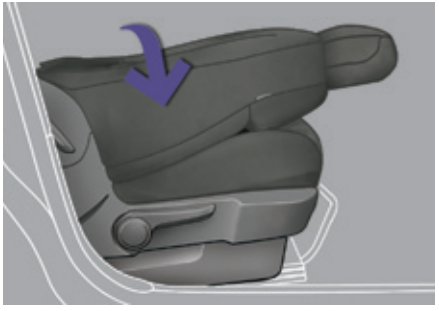
0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

Table position, front passenger seat

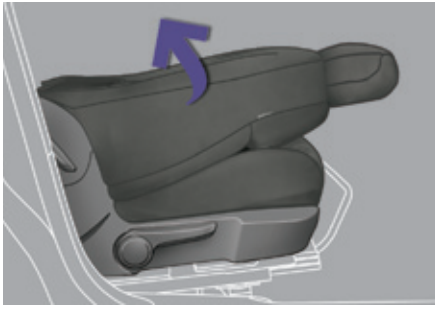


Folding the seat backrest

- ☞ Raise the armrest and fold up the "aircraft" style table, fixed on the back of the seat.
- ☞ Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.
- ☞ To make the operation easier, place the head restraint in the low position (if the seat is in the fully forward position).
- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with the video pack, place the protective cover on the head restraint.
- ☞ Lift the control, located behind the seat, then guide the seat back forwards.



This position, associated with that of the rear seats, allows you to transport long objects inside the vehicle.
The maximum weight on the seat is 30 kg.



Returning the seat to the normal position

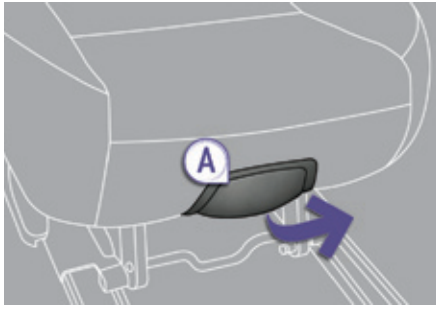
- ☞ Guide the seat backrest rearwards until it locks in place.

! When the seat backrest is in this position, only the 2nd row passenger seat located behind the driver can be used.



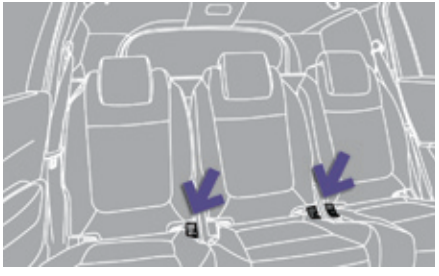
2nd row seats

Forwards-backwards adjustment

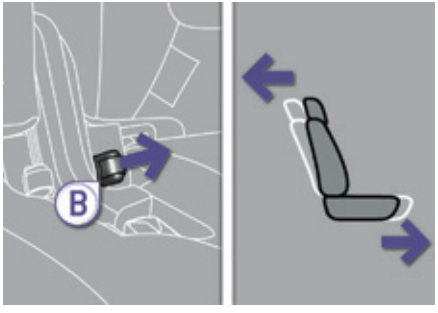


Lift the control **A**, located at the front of the seat, then adjust the seat to the position desired.

"Comfort" position



The three 2nd row seats are independent of each other and all the same width. They all have a "comfort" position.



Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

☞ Pull on the control **B** and guide the seat rearwards.

The backrest reclines and the seat base moves forward slightly.

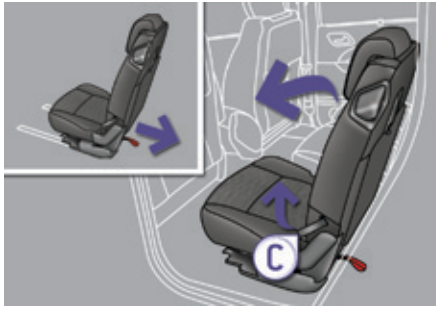
Returning the seat to the initial position

☞ Pull on the control **B** and allow the seat to come forwards.

! Always supervise any movements of seats by children.

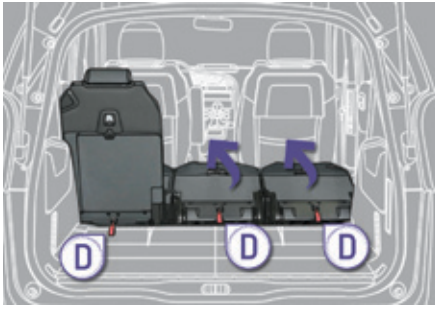
Flat floor

Each seat can be folded onto the floor to enable you to modify your vehicle's interior space.



Folding the seat from the 2nd row

- ☞ Place the seats as far towards the rear as possible.
- ☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.
- ☞ Push the backrest slightly forwards so that the backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The assembly then lowers onto the floor.

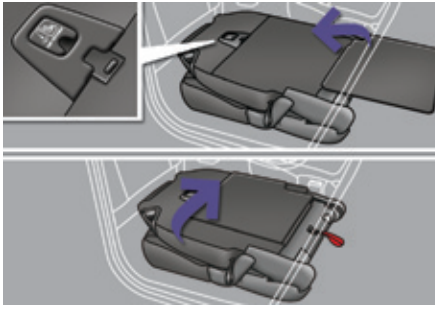


Folding the seat from the boot

When loading, for example, you can fold the seat or seats directly from the boot, once you have folded the 3rd row seats (7 seat version).

- ☞ Place the seats as far towards the rear as possible.
- ☞ Pull on the strap **D** to release the chosen seat and push the backrest gently forwards.

i To avoid damaging the mechanism, the strap **D** unclips under excessive force. Simply reclip it to restore the system to working order.



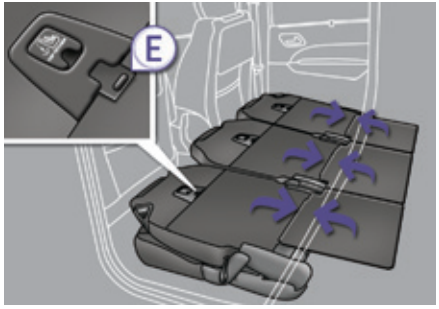
Repositioning seat

- ☞ If necessary, return the 2nd row seat rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.
- ☞ Raise the backrest and push it rearwards until it locks.

! Before moving the 3rd row seats (7 seat version), return the 2nd row seat rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.
Emergency exit: if the first system (strap **C**) fails, strap **D** enables the 3rd row passengers to exit quickly.

Supervise any movement of seats by children.

Rigid panel



Each 2nd row seat backrest has a rigid panel attached.

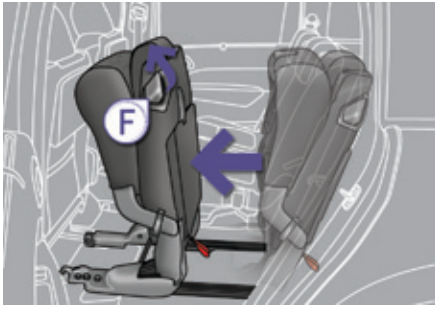
This panel enables you to:

- have a continuous load surface in the boot, whatever the positions of the seats,
- avoid having objects sliding under the 2nd row seats. 30 kg maximum on each panel.

Releasing / Securing the rigid panel

- ☞ Before deploying the rigid panels, check that the 2nd row seats are positioned as far towards the rear as possible.
- ☞ Slide the latch **E** on the panel upwards, to release it.
- ☞ Return the panel to its initial position, then slide the latch **E** downwards, to secure it.

Entering / Exiting the 3rd row (7 seat version)



- ☞ Raise the aircraft style table on the 2nd row seat if it is down.
- ☞ Hold the control **F** in the raised position, the seat unlocks and the seat base comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Push the seat backrest forwards, holding the control **F** forwards.

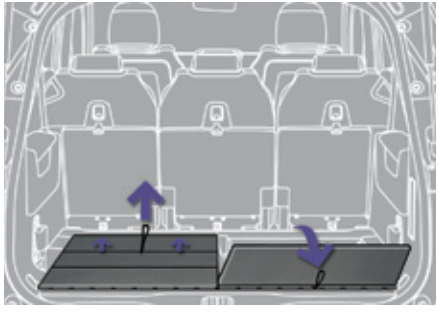
Repositioning the seat, from the outside, with the door open

If there are passengers seated in the 3rd row (7 seat version):

- ☞ Manually return the assembly as far as possible rearwards; the seat does not return as far as the maximum rearwards position so as to retain leg space for the 3rd row passengers.
- ☞ Fold the seat base.

3rd row seats (7 seat version)

Concertina boards



Two rigid concertina boards, which cannot be separated from the vehicle, cover the two 3rd row seats, when these are in the folded position.

Folding the concertina boards

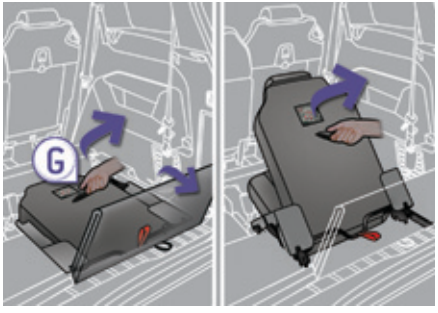
☞ Pull on the control, the 3 sections of the board will fold like a concertina.

When the 3rd row seats are upright, these concertina boards can be left either:

- flat behind the seats,
- in the vertical position,

thereby leaving a storage area available. The two rigid boards can each support a maximum of 100 kg.

Installing a seat



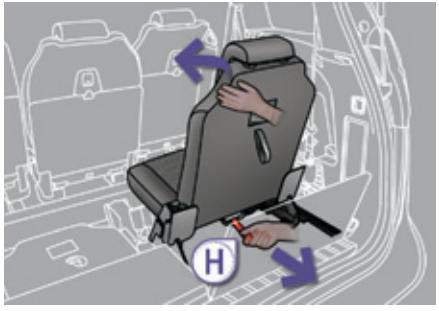
☞ Remove the load space screen.

☞ If necessary, return the 2nd row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.

☞ Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.

☞ Pull on the control **G**, located behind the seat backrest. The backrest tilts rearwards pulling the seat base with it. The seat locks in the open position.

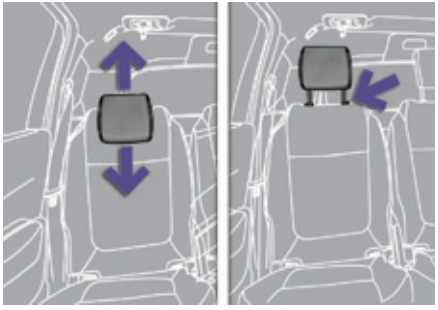
Storing a seat



- Lower the head restraints.
- Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.
- Pull on the control **H**, located at the bottom of the seat backrest. The seat is released.
- Next push the backrest gently forwards. The backrest pivots folding onto the seat base. The seat base then folds into the stowage area provided for that purpose.
- Reposition the concertina boards over the folded seats.

! Before moving the 3rd row seats, return the rigid panels of the 2nd row seats to the upright position and lock them in place.
Do not try to fold a 3rd row seat that has not first had the backrest fully locked in place.
Do not leave objects either on or underneath the seat bases of the 3rd row seats when you are folding them.
Do not leave your hand on the control **H** as you fold the seats, as you risk trapping your fingers.

Rear head restraints



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:
- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.
To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.
To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in line with the seat back.

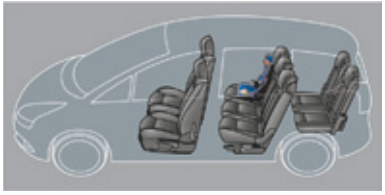
! Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Seat modularity and the various seat configurations

Designed to be modular, your vehicle offers numerous seat installation and loading configurations.
Operations to change the existing configuration must only be carried out when stationary (see paragraphs "Rear seats").

Examples of configurations

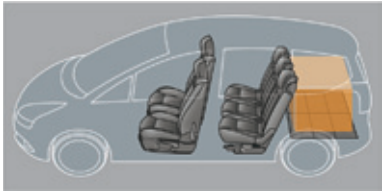
7 seats



Transport (4 seats)



5 seats



Transporting long objects



Loading a large volume



Mirrors

Door mirrors

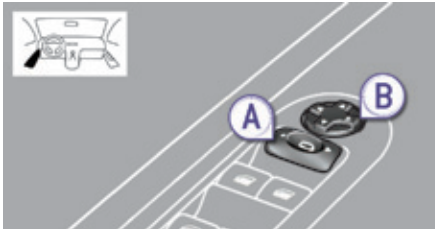


Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen.
Refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" section.

! The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.



Adjustment

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- Automatic: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

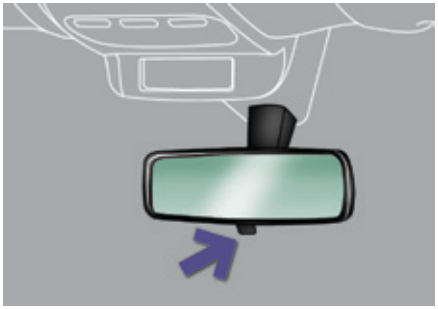
i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

i If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual day/night model



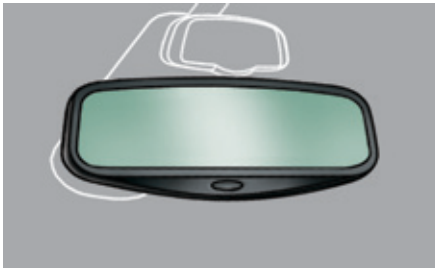
Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Steering wheel adjustment



- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting controls

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the lighting progressively in relation to the climatic conditions and so improve the driver's visibility:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are installed to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better visibility,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

Function settings

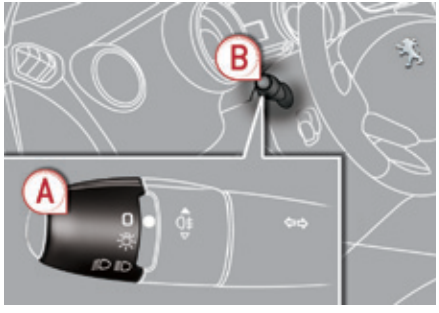
You can activate / deactivate the following lighting functions:

- automatic guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting.

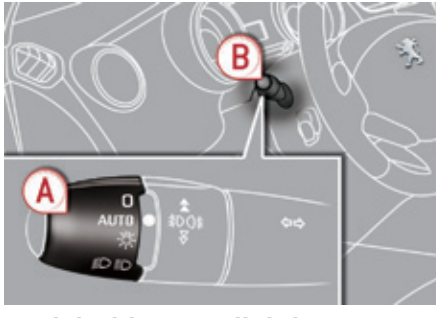
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact an official dealer or a qualified workshop.



Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting

Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0 — Lighting off (ignition off) / Daytime running lamps (engine running).

AUTO — Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

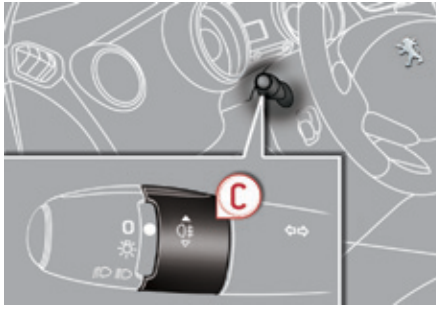
Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

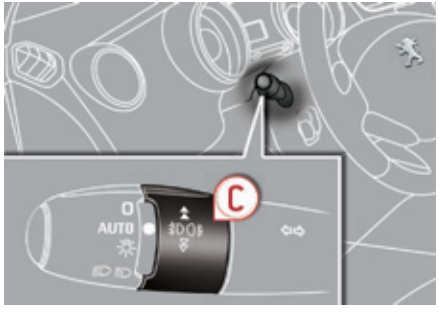
In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.



Model with rear foglamp only



Model with front and rear foglamps

C. Foglamp selection ring.

Rear foglamp

This operates with dipped and main beam headlamps.

- To switch on the foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch off the foglamp, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

When the lighting is switched on automatically (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on until the rear foglamp is switched off.

Front and rear foglamps

The rear foglamp operates with the dipped and main beam headlamps.
The front foglamps also operate with the sidelamps.

- To switch on the front foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch on the rear foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards again.
- To switch off the rear foglamp, turn the ring **C** rearwards.
- To switch off the front foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards again.

When the lighting is switched on automatically (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on until the rear foglamp is switched off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and the sidelamps will remain on.

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

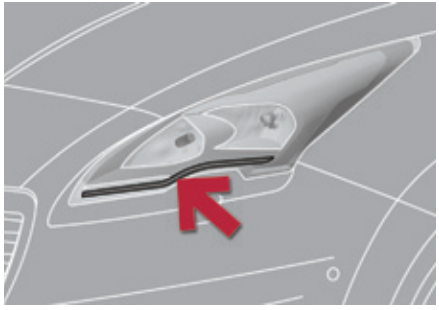
Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.
If the lighting is switched on manually after switching off the ignition, there is an audible signal when a front door is opened to warn the driver that they have forgotten to switch off the vehicle's lighting, with the ignition off.
They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

Front daytime running lamps (light-emitting diodes)



They come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "**0**" or "**AUTO**".

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated according to the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on



- Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

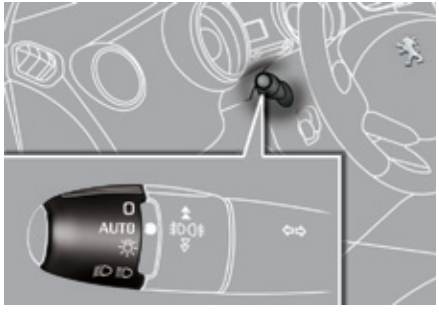
The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle again.

The duration of the welcome lighting is identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the ambient light returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Activation



☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position), under low ambient light the dipped beam headlamps remain on when the ignition is switched off.

Programming



Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting, is set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated according to the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on



☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle again.

The duration of the welcome lighting is identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Manual beam adjustment of halogen headlamps

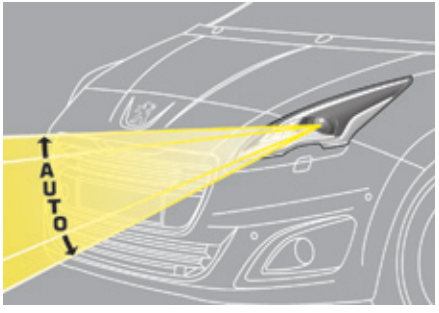


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the beam height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Automatic beam adjustment with xenon headlamps



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle.

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen. The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

If a fault occurs, do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Directional lighting

This system is linked to the presence of xenon headlamps.
When the main or dipped beam headlamps are on, this system illuminates the inside of bends (from 12 mph - 20 km/h).



With directional lighting

Programming



The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The state of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.



Without directional lighting

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

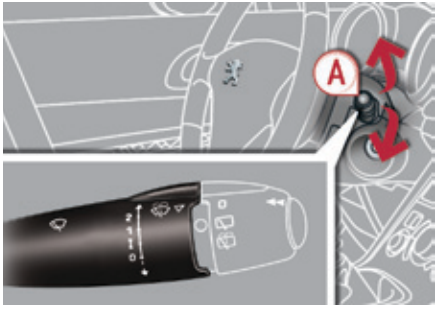
Wiper controls

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the weather conditions.

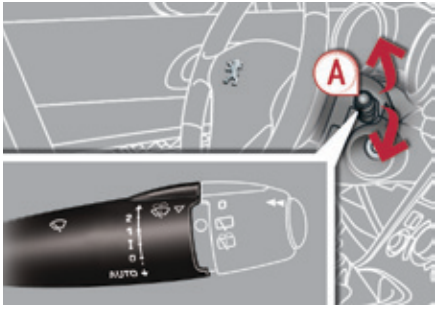
Programming

You can modify the settings for the following functions:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.



Model with intermittent wiping



Model with AUTO wiping

Manual controls

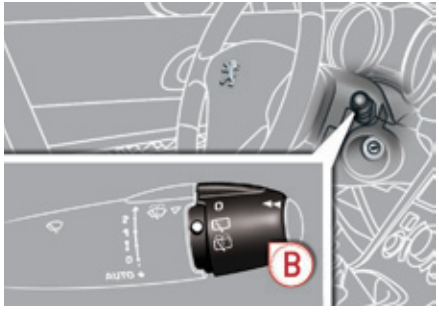
Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

2	Fast (heavy rain).
1	Normal (moderate rain).
I	Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
0	Off.
↓	Single wipe (press down and release).
	or
AUTO ↓	Automatic, then single wipe. Refer to the corresponding section.

4

Rear wiper



B. Rear wiper selection ring:

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

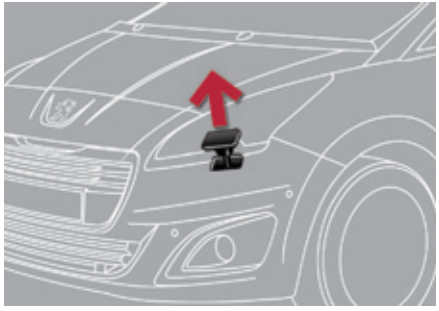
When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are on.

Programming



Switching the automatic operation of the rear wiper in reverse on or off is done via the vehicle configuration menu. This function is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, remember to deactivate the automatic rear wiper.



Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you.
The windscreen wash then the wipers operate for a set time.
The headlamp wash is also activated **if the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Headlamp wash

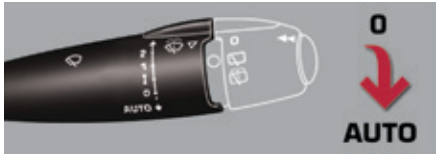
Press the end of the lighting stalk to activate the headlamp wash, when the dipped beam headlamps are on.

Screenwash/headlamp wash low level

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

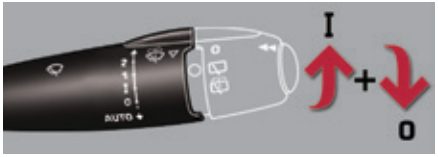
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.
It is accompanied by a message in the screen.



Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.
It is accompanied by a message in the screen.

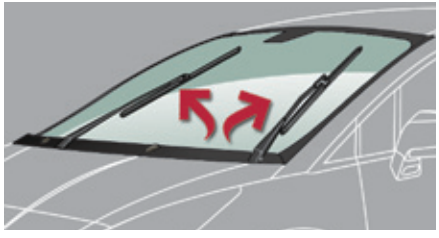
The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

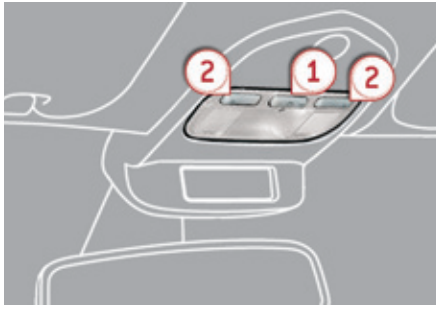


This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

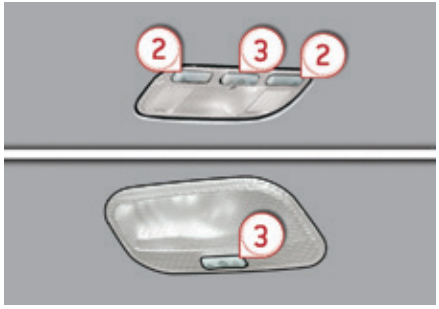
☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Courtesy lamps



1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**



3. **Rear courtesy lamp**

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

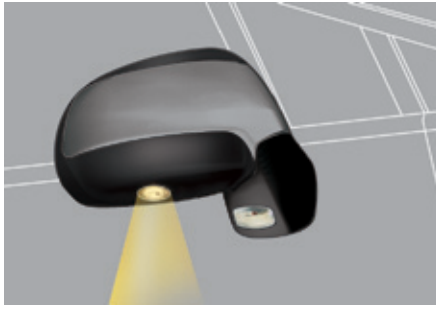
- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

The spotlamps come on:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

Switching off

They are timed to go off automatically.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



Switching on

At night, the mood lamp in the front courtesy lamp comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Footwell lighting

The soft lighting provided by the footwell lamps improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on



Its operation is identical to that of the courtesy lamps. The lamps come on when one of the doors is opened.

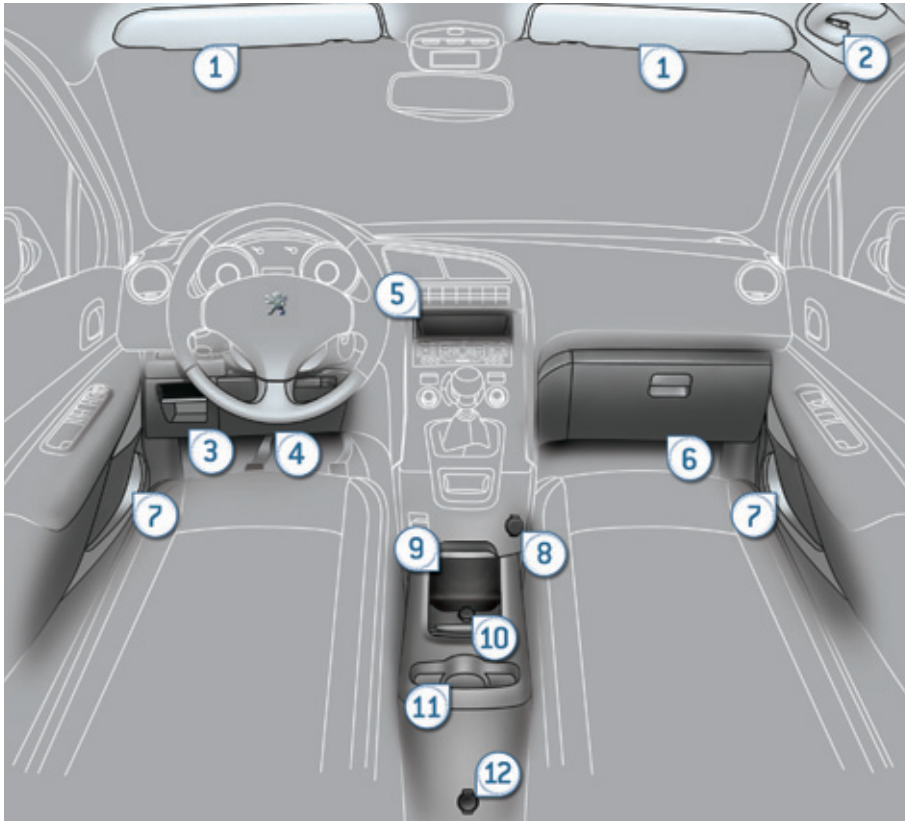
Boot lamp



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

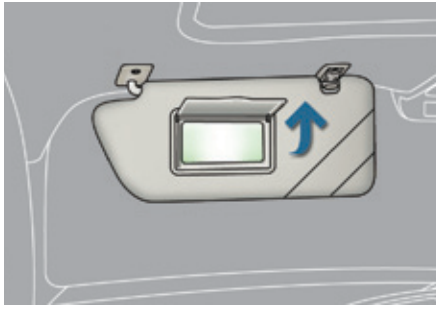
Different lighting times are available:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

Interior fittings



1. **Sun visor**
2. **Grab handle with coat hook**
3. **Storage compartment**
4. **Storage compartment under the steering wheel**
5. **Storage compartment**
6. **Illuminated glove box**
7. **Door pockets**
8. **Front 12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
9. **Storage compartment**
10. **PEUGEOT Connect USB**
11. **Cup holder**
12. **Rear 12 V accessory socket (120 W)**

Sun visor

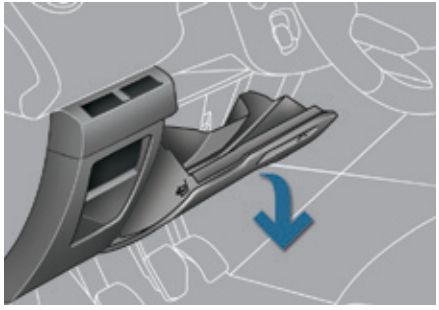


Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Driver's storage compartments



Storage box

This has storage areas for the handbook pack, ...

☞ To open, pull the handle then tilt the box.

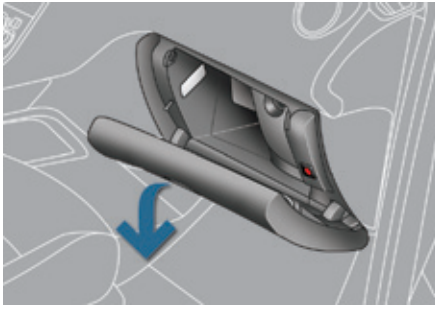
Card holder

This can be used for a toll payment ticket or parking card, for example.

Coin storage

Storage

Illuminated glove box



This has storage areas, audio sockets for a portable player, ...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

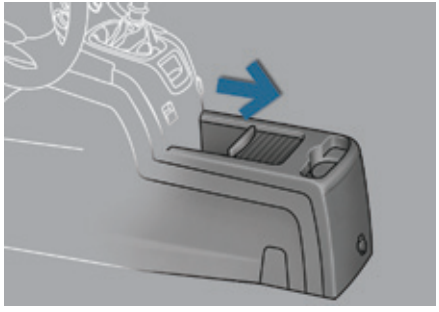
The lamp comes on when the lid is opened.

To connect a portable player refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Centre console

Storage space for the driver and front passenger.

Storage

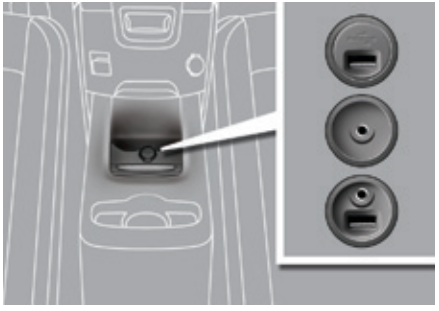


☞ Slide the cover for access to the 10.5 litre storage compartment.

This can hold 2 half-litre bottles.

A ventilation outlet delivers cooled air.

PEUGEOT Connect USB



This connection unit consists of a JACK auxiliary socket and/or a USB port.

It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.

It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

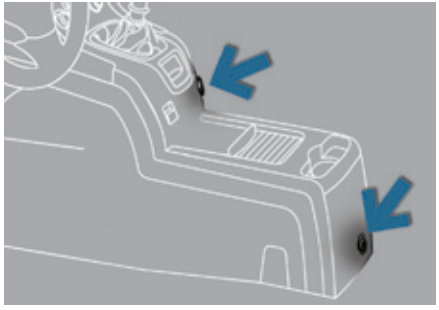
You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them in the multifunction screen.

Connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically.

While charging, a message is displayed if the current consumption by the portable device exceeds the power rating of the port.

i For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

12 V accessory sockets



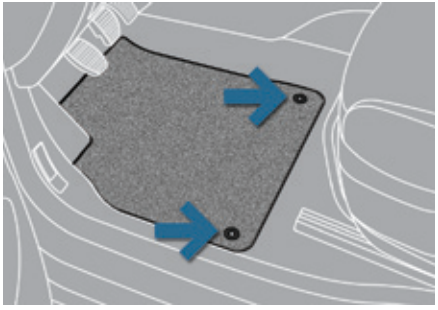
☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 Watts), remove the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

Exceeding the maximum power could result in damage to your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Mats

Removable carpet protection.



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

☞ move the seat as far back as possible,

☞ unclip the fixings,

☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

☞ position the mat correctly,

☞ refit the fixings by pressing,

☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

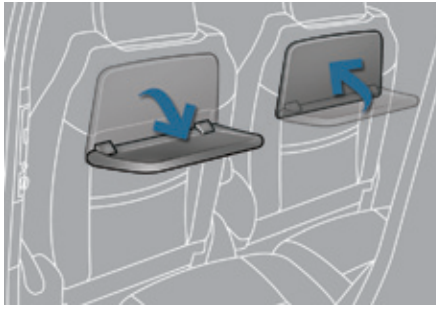
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

"Aircraft" type tables

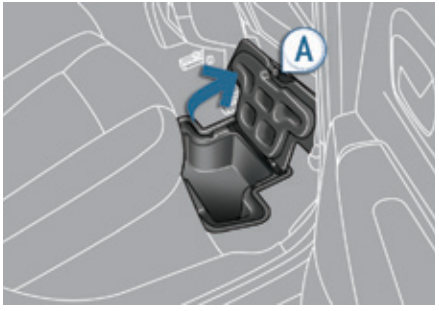


Installed on the back of each front seat, these allow you to set down objects.

- ☞ To use the table, lower it fully until it locks in the low position.
- ☞ To store the table, raise it, passing the point of resistance, to the high position.

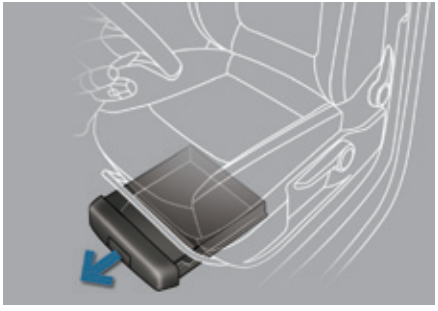
! On the passenger side, do not forget to fold the "aircraft" type table before placing the seat in the table position. Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.

Storage compartments under the rear footwells



Depending on the configuration, the vehicle has storage compartments under the footwells, located forward of the outer rear seats. Access is via clipped flaps with a handle **A**.

Storage drawer



It is located under the driver's seat (manual adjustment).

Opening

- ☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it.

Do not place heavy objects in the drawers.

5

Rear multimedia



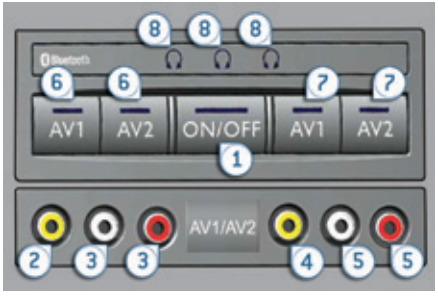
This multimedia system allows rear passengers to connect one or two external portable systems (audio or video player, games consoles, DVD player...). The sound is played through two Bluetooth® wireless headphone sets, while the video content is displayed in two 7-inch screens built into the backs of the front seat head restraints.

This system operates only with the engine running.

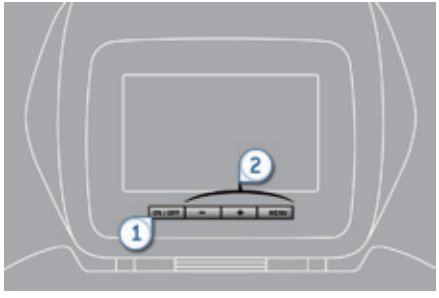
Description

The pack includes:

- the connection and control panel fitted on the rear face of the centre console,
- two 7-inch screens built into the front head restraints (with protective covers),
- two wireless Bluetooth technology headphone sets with rechargeable batteries,
- a 12 V charger with two outlets allowing the simultaneous charging of two headphones.



1. Power switch
2. AV1 video input (yellow RCA socket)
3. Stereo audio input A (red and white RCA sockets)
4. AV2 video input (yellow RCA socket)
5. Stereo audio input B (red and white RCA sockets)
6. Selection of display in the left hand screen (AV1 or AV2)
7. Selection of display in the right hand screen (AV1 or AV2)
8. Connection indicator lamps for the Bluetooth audio headphones (blue)

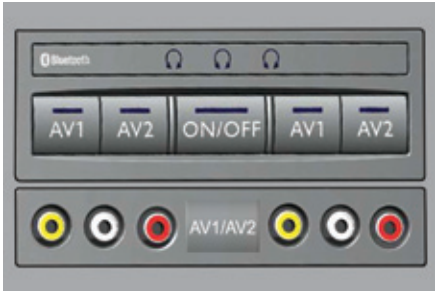


1. Screen power switch
2. Display adjustment buttons



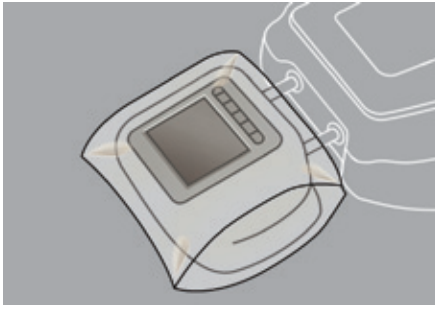
Each headphone set has a switch, a connection indicator lamp (blue) and a channel selector (A or B).

Operation



- With the engine running, connect your portable system to the RCA connectors (e.g. with AV1 on the left).
- Press the switch on the control panel, the indicator lamp comes on and the AV1 indicator lamps come on.
- Make a long press on the switch, its indicator lamp flashes in blue.
- Make a long press on the control panel switch, the pairing with the headphone set is complete when the blue indicator lamps on the headphones and on the system are on continuously.
- Repeat the operation for the other headphone set.
- Press the screen switch if you have a video source.
- Start playing your portable system.
- It is possible at any time to modify the source for the video display (using button **6** or **7** on the control panel: the indicator lamp for the source selected comes on) as well as the audio channel (using the selector on the headphones).

! The Multimedia system allows the connection of a third Bluetooth headphone set, not supplied.



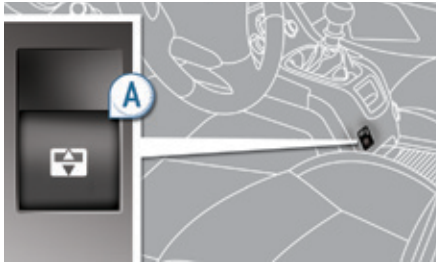
i If your seat is in the table position, position a cover to avoid damaging the screen.
These covers also conceal each screen.

Panoramic sunroof

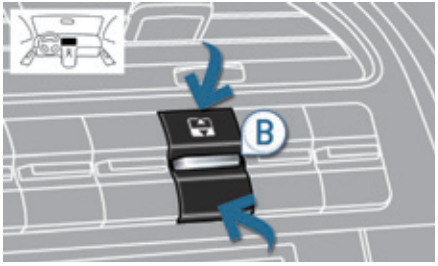
It has a blind that can be used to improve temperature and noise related comfort in the passenger compartment.

Motorised blind

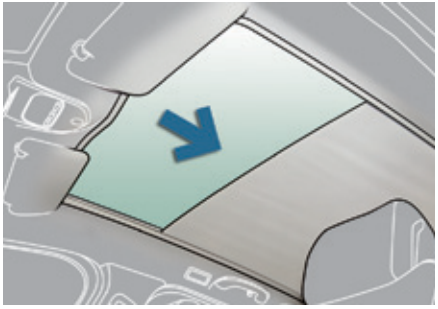
Depending on version, the blind is opened and closed using:
- button **A** on the centre console,
- or button **B** on the dashboard.



With button **A**:
- pull the control to open the blind,
- push the control to close the blind.



With button **B**:
- press at the top to open the blind,
- press at the bottom to close the blind.



Manual mode

Maintaining pressure on the control opens or closes the blind: movement stops if you release the control. Pressure on the control in the opposite direction reverses the movement.

The control is operational with the ignition on and for 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Automatic mode

Pressing and releasing the control opens or closes the blind completely. Pressing again stops the movement.

Safety anti-pinch

In automatic mode and at the end of its travel, if the blind meets an obstacle while closing it stops and moves back slightly.
Reinitialisation: after reconnecting the battery or in the event of a fault while the blind is moving, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ Operate the control until the blind is fully closed or open.
- ☞ Continue to press for at least 3 seconds. A slight movement of the blind will then be noticeable, confirming the reinitialisation.

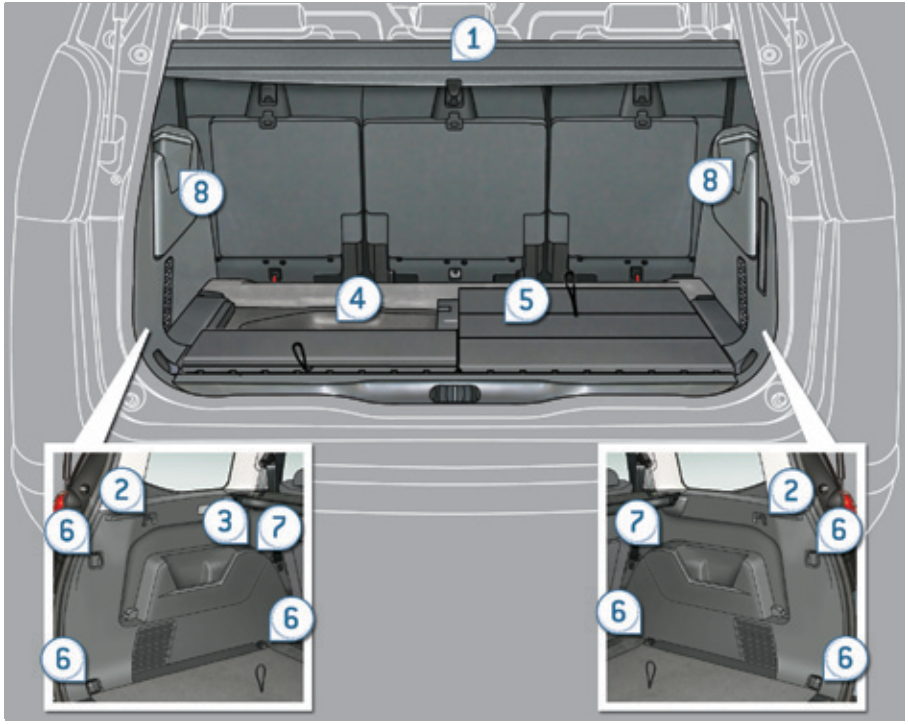
If the blind opens on its own while closing, and immediately after it stops.

- ☞ Operate the control until the blind is fully open.
- ☞ Operate the control until the blind is fully closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

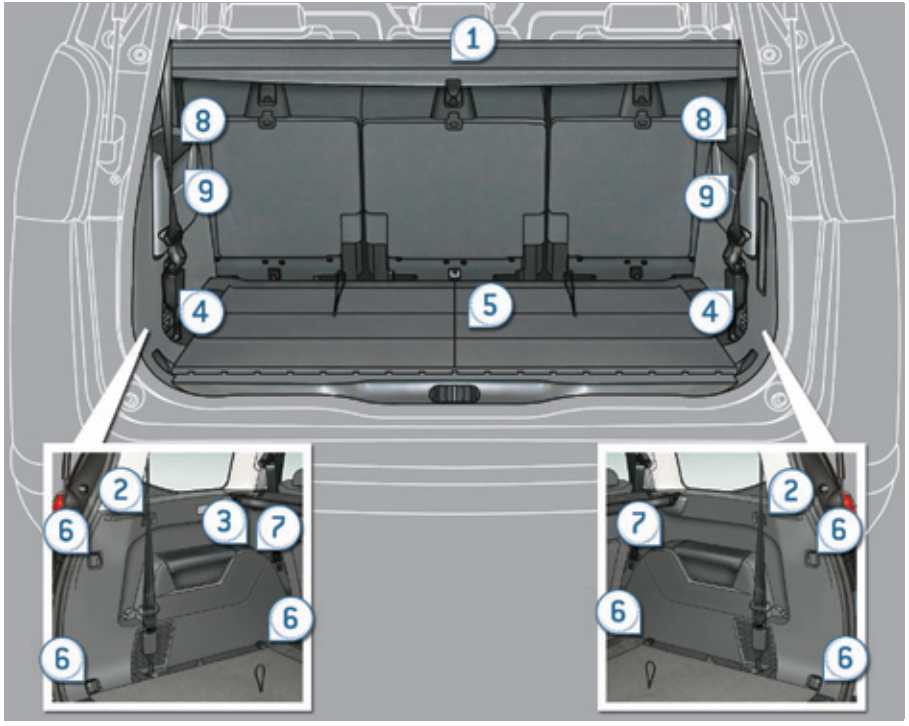
If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the blind.
When the driver operates the blind control, they must ensure that nothing and no one is preventing the correct closing of the blind.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the blind.

Boot fittings (5-seat version)



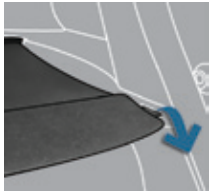
1. **Load space cover**
2. **Hooks**
3. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
4. **Storage compartment under the floor**
5. **Concertina boards**
6. **Stowing rings on the floor**
7. **Cup holder**
8. **Storage compartments or audio amplifier**

Boot fittings (7-seat version)



1. **Load space cover**
2. **Hooks**
3. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
4. **Buckles for the 3rd row seat belts**
5. **Concertina boards**
6. **Stowing rings on the floor**
7. **Cup holder**
8. **Armrests**
9. **Storage compartments or audio amplifier**

Roller load space cover





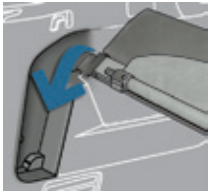
To remove the load space cover:

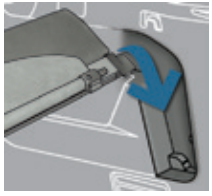
- ☞ remove the load space cover guides from the rails on the boot pillars,
- ☞ reel in the load space cover in its roller,





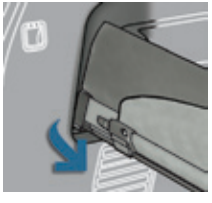
- ☞ pivot the ends of the roller upwards to release it,
- ☞ remove the roller from its support.





To store the load space cover, roller uppermost and flap facing towards the inside of the vehicle:

- ☞ place the right-hand end in its housing,
- ☞ slide the left-hand end into the guide then into its housing,





- ☞ secure the assembly by pivoting the ends downwards.



To install the load space cover:

- ☞ position one of the ends of the roller in its support,
- ☞ insert the second end in its support,
- ☞ pivot the ends of the roller downwards to secure it,
- ☞ reel out the load space cover to the boot pillars,
- ☞ insert the load space screen guides in the rails on the boot pillars.

! If you use the 3rd row seats (7 seat version), it is essential to store the roller in its housing.

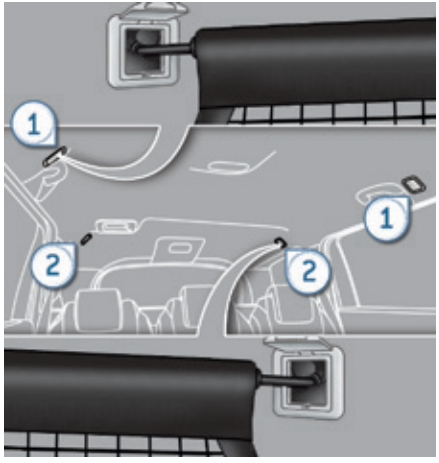
i The roller has two rings for fixing the luggage retaining net depending on its location.

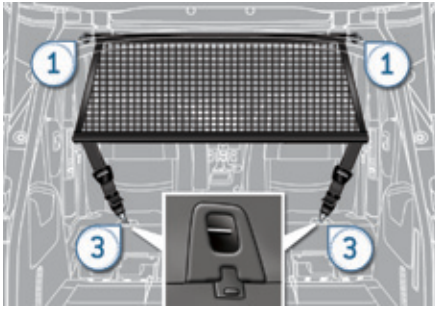
High load retaining net*

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.
- behind the rear seats (row 2).

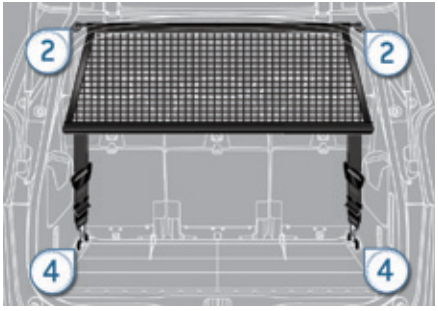
i When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.





To use it in row 1:

- ☞ fold the rear seats,
- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings **1**,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ slacken the straps fully,
- ☞ fix the snap hook of each of the straps on the corresponding Top Tether ring **3** (located on the back of the folded rear side seats),
- ☞ tighten the straps,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.



To use it in row 2:

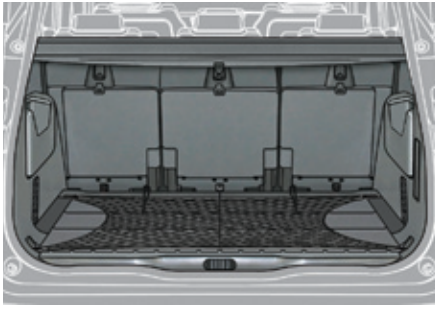
- ☞ roll up or remove the load space screen,
- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings **2**,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **2**, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ fix the snap hook of each of the straps in the corresponding stowing ring **4**,
- ☞ tighten the straps,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

* If your vehicle is equipped with this.

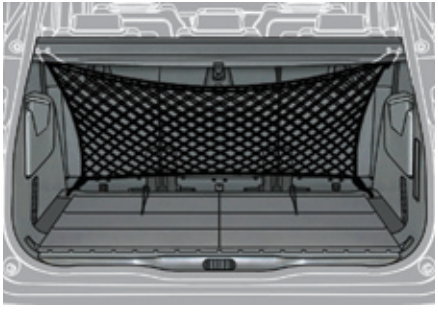
Luggage retaining net

Hooked onto the stowing rings on the floor and/or on the load space cover roller, the luggage retaining net available as an accessory enables you to secure your luggage.

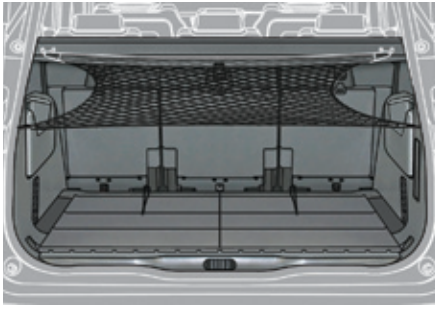
There are 4 possible positions:



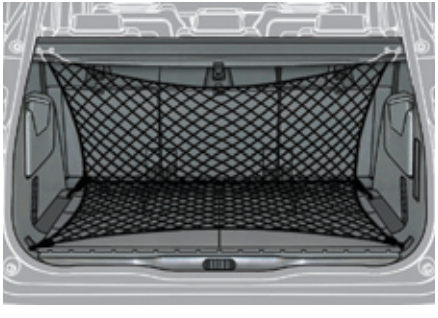
- flat at the bottom of the boot,



- vertical at the back of the rear seats,

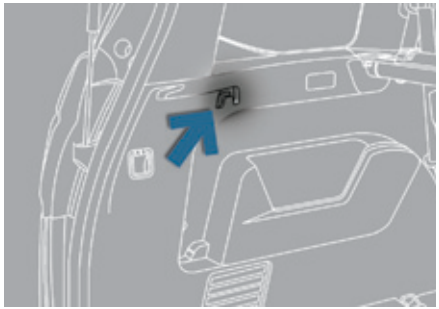


- horizontal, level with the load space cover,



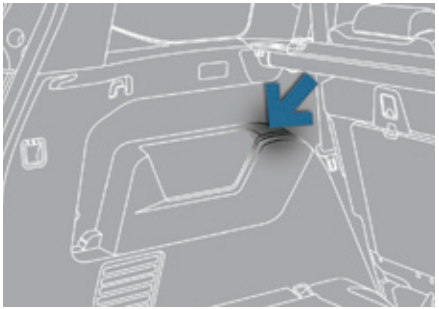
- flat at the bottom of the boot and vertical at the back of the rear seats.

Hooks



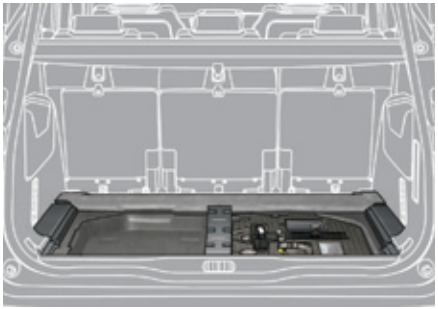
The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.

12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Storage box (5 seat version)



☞ Raise the concertina board to gain access to the storage box.

Depending on the configuration, this has areas for storing:

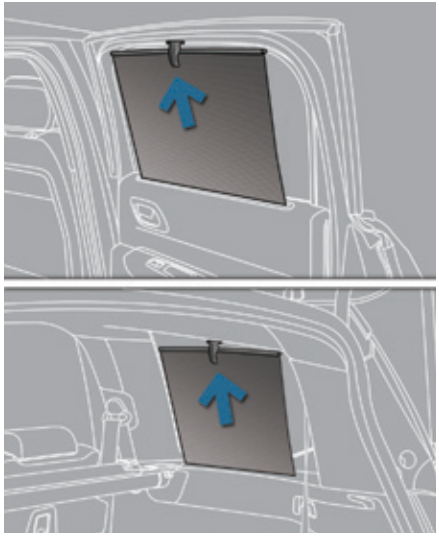
- a box of spare bulbs,
- a first aid kit,
- a puncture repair kit,
- two warning triangles,
- ...

Rear side blinds

Fitted on the rear windows, these protect your young children from the sun.

☞ Pull the blind by the central tab.

2nd row



3rd row (7 seat version)

☞ Position the blind attachment on the hook.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of PEUGEOT main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **outer rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat at the front*



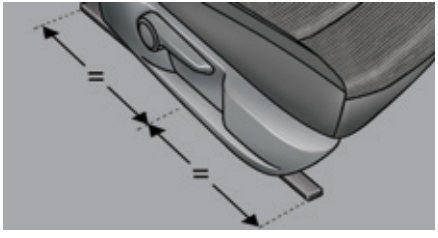
Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.



Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened. Leave the passenger's airbag active.



Passenger seat in the fully back and highest position.

i Ensure that the seat belt is properly tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger's seat.

* Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child seat on this seating position.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

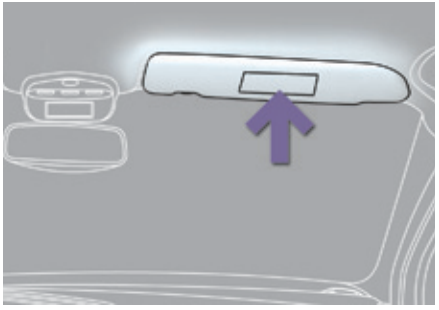
! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



Passenger airbag OFF







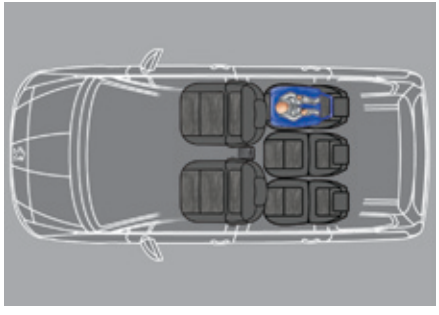
i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage “seljaga sõidusuunas“ lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l’arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l’ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

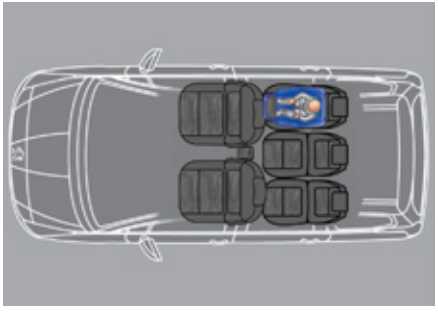
Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



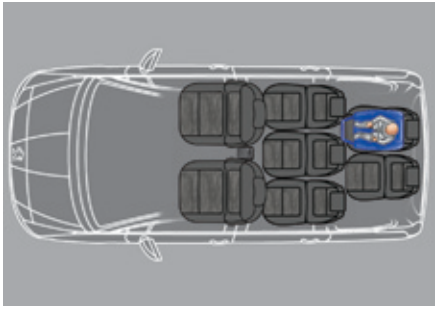
When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Seats in the 3rd row

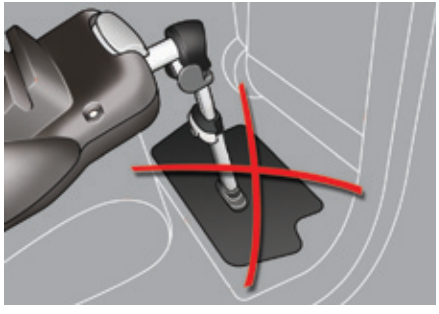


When a child seat is installed **on a 3rd row passenger seat**, move the 2nd row seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the child seat and the legs of the child do not touch the 2nd row seat.
A child seat with a stay must never be installed on a **3rd row passenger seat**.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

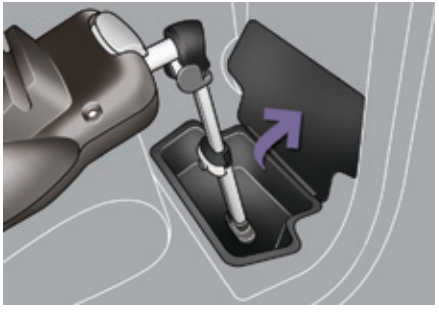
Installing a child seat with a support leg

Care must be taken when installing a child seat with a support leg in the vehicle. In particular you should look for the presence of a storage compartment below the rear seat footwells.



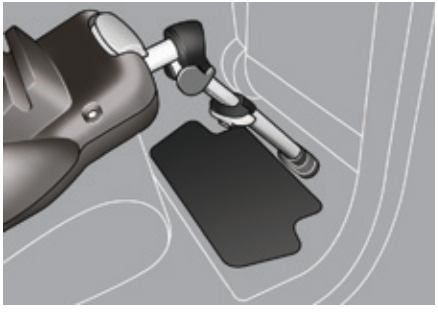
! Do not place the support leg on the storage compartment cover; it might break in a serious impact. Where the adjustments of the support leg allow it, we suggest two other possibilities for installation.
The centre rear seat does not have a storage compartment below the footwell. You can therefore easily fit a child seat with a support leg, whether installed with the Isofix mountings or using the 3 point seat belt.

At the bottom of the storage compartment



If the support leg is long enough, you can adjust it so that it contact the bottom of the storage compartment. Remove all objects from the storage compartment before installing the support leg.

Away from the storage compartment area



Another possibility, if the support leg is long enough and can be inclined sufficiently (always by following the recommendations given in the installation instructions for the child seat), is to position the support leg so that it contacts the floor away from the storage compartment. Adjust the longitudinal position of the front or rear seat to obtain a satisfactory position for the support leg away from the storage compartment.

! If you cannot fit the support leg in the way described in one of these two procedures, you should not fit a child seat with support leg to this seat.

Child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER/BRITAX Baby-Safe Plus". Installed in the rearward facing position.		**L2** "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX".
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	**L5** "KLIPPAN Optima". From the age of approximately 6 years (22 kg), the booster is used on its own.		**L6** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be secured using the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Installing child seats using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in accordance with the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Weight of the child and indicative age				
Seat	**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (**b**) and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c)** with height adjuster 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Front passenger seat **(c)** without height adjuster	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
5 seats (2 rows)				
Outer rear seats **(d)** **(e)** 	**U***	**U***	**U***	**U***
Centre rear seat **(d)** **(e)** 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

a: universal child seat, child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.

b: group 0, from birth to 10 kg. Shells seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

c: consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

d: to install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.

e: to install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest upright.

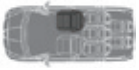
U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, rearward facing and/or forward facing.

U (R): same as **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

L-: only the child seats indicated can be installed on the seat concerned (according to local legislation).

X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seating position. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Seat	Weight of the child and indicative age **Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c)** with height adjuster 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Front passenger seat **(c)** without height adjuster	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
7 seats (3 rows)				
Outer rear seats 2nd row **(d)** **(e)** 	**U***	**U***	**U***	**U***
Centre rear seat 2nd row **(d)** **(e)** 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Rear seats 3rd row 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

a: universal child seat, child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.

b: group 0, from birth to 10 kg. Shells seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

c: consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

d: To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.

e: To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest upright.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, rearward facing and/or forward facing.

U (R): same as **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

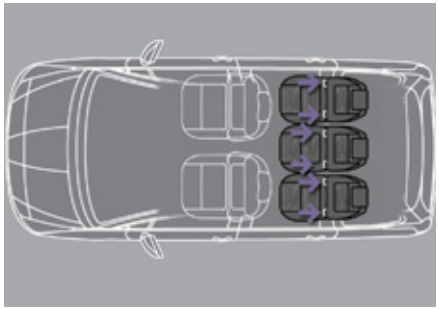
L-: only the child seats indicated can be installed on the seat concerned (according to local legislation).

X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

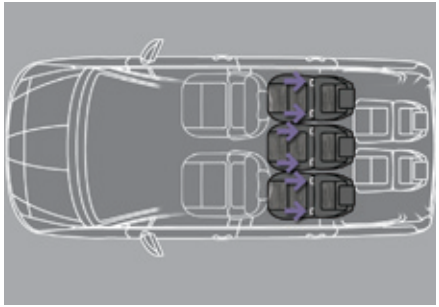
! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

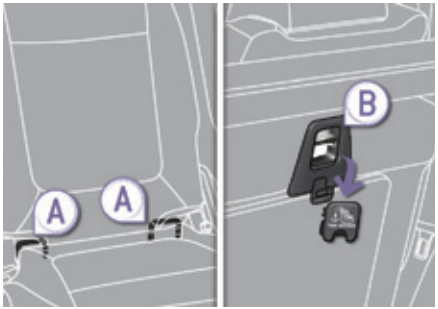
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



5 seats



7 seats



The ISOFIX mountings are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,
- a ring **B**, located under a cover on the back of the top of the seat backrest, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap. Its position is indicated by a marking.

Located on the back of the seat backrest, the top tether is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This device limits forward tipping of the child seat, in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** (or top tether) which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it after the child seat has been removed),
- remove the **TOP TETHER** cover by pulling at its cut-out,
- pass the child seat strap behind the seat backrest, centred between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- secure the upper strap fixing to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

ISOFIX child seat

Recommended by PEUGEOT and approved for your vehicle

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Observe strictly the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

For information on the possibilities for fitting ISOFIX child seats to your vehicle, refer to the table of seating positions.

ISOFIX child seat with TOP TETHER
RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
 Installed only in the "forward facing" position. Is attached to the rings **A**, as well as the ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.
Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Seating positions for installing ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter between **A** and **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell**		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	**X**		**X**			**X**		**X**		
5 seats (2 rows)										
Outer rear seats 	**IL-SU***		**IL-SU***			**IL-SU***		**IUF* IL-SU***		
Centre rear seat 	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section on "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap to the upper ring of an ISOFIX seating position.

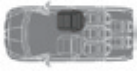
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a shell seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the section on "ISOFIX mountings".

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or shell for the weight group indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell**		**"rearwards-facing"**			**"rearwards-facing"**		**"forwards-facing"**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	**X**		**X**			**X**		**X**		
7 seats (3 rows)										
Outer rear seats 2nd row 	**IL-SU***		**IL-SU***			**IL-SU***		**IUF* IL-SU***		
Centre rear seat 2nd row 	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
Rear seats 3rd row 	Not Isofix									

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section on "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the top belt to the upper ring of an ISOFIX seating position.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with a top belt or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a shell seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the top belt, refer to the section on "ISOFIX mountings".

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or shell for the weight group indicated.

Recommendations

Child seats

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body **to a minimum**, even for short journeys.
For the installation of a child seat using a seat belt, ensure that this is well tensioned on the child seat and that it is holding the child seat firmly against the seat of your vehicle. If your front passenger seat is adjustable, move it forward if necessary.
At the rear seats, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a forward facing child seat.

For this, move the front seat forward and if necessary straighten its backrest.

For optimum installation of the "forward facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, or in contact if possible
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on the passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stowed or attached securely so that it is not thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.
Refit the head restraint as soon as the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying a child on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster cushion

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

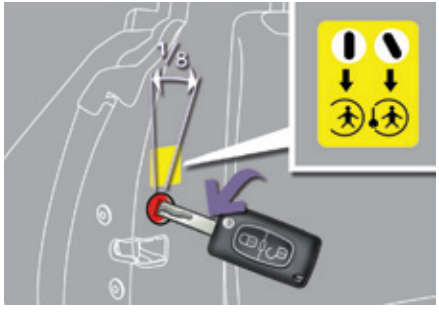
- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking



☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn using the ignition key as shown in the label on the door. **Check that the lock is on.**

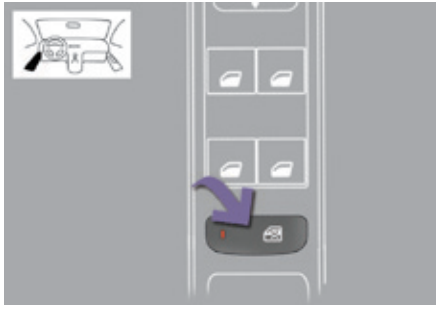
Unlocking

☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn using the ignition key.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

Switching on



☞ With the ignition on, press this button.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is on.
This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.
It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Switching off

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is off.
This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the state of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

i To know whether your vehicle has an electric child lock, check for the absence of a label indicating the presence of the manual child lock control (see the corresponding section).

Direction indicators



☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the left.
☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the right.

> If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

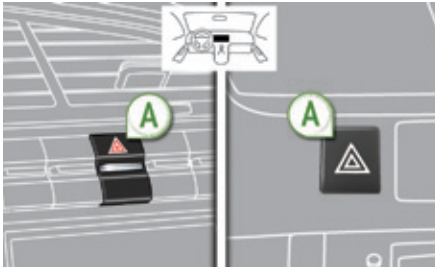
Three flashes

Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash 3 times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful for changing lane on fast roads.

Hazard warning lamps

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



☞ Tilt or press button **A**, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) incorporating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered according to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Snow driving assistance (Intelligent Traction Control)

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **Intelligent Traction Control**.
This automatic system continuously checks for situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, **Intelligent Traction Control** limits the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control.
In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud…), it can be useful to temporarily deactivate the **dynamic stability control and wheel anti-slip** systems to allow a degree of wheel spin and so recover grip.
It is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.
Snow tyres are strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Operation

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

When this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the ABS, which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD), which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

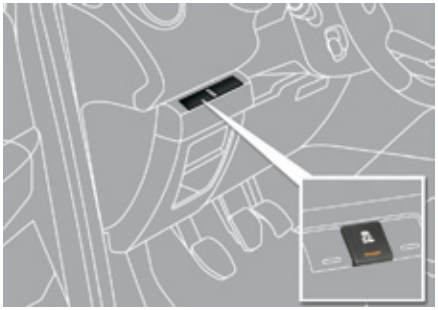
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In both cases, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), make sure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

In emergency braking, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.
As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation if the engine and brakes.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC and ASR, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.

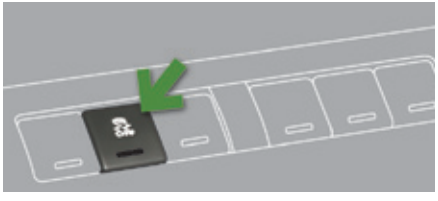


☞ Press this button.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The DSC and ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine and on the brakes in the event of a involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation

The systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).
Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually:



☞ Press this button again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Operating fault

Illumination of this warning lamp and the lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicate a fault with the system.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

DSC/ASR

The DSC and ASR systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep the DSC and ASR systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.
To benefit in full from the effectiveness of the DSC and ASR systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the the vehicle to retain neutral handling on the road.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

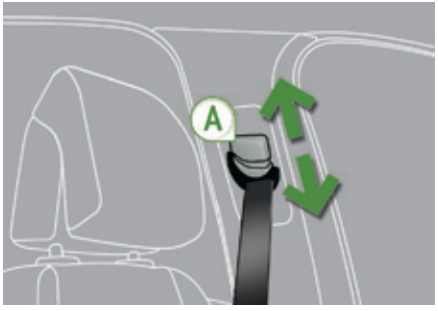


Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.



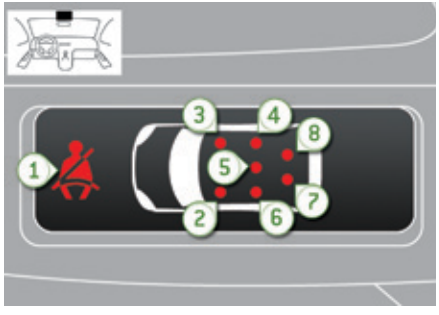
Height adjustment

- ☞ To adjust the anchorage point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it until you find a notch.

Front seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.
From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

7 seat version

7. 3rd row rear left seat belt warning lamp
8. 3rd row rear right seat belt warning lamp.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter (with the exception of the centre rear seat).

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

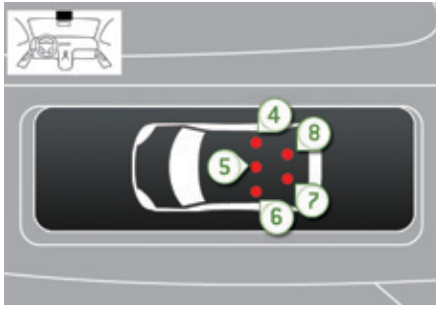
- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp

This warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display

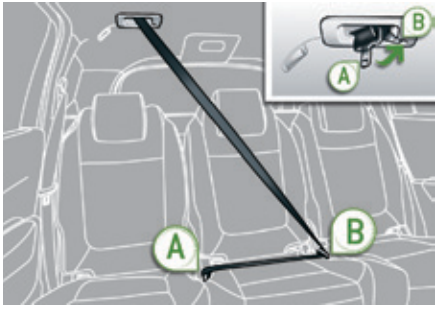


When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4** to **8** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.
When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4**, **5**, **6**, **7** or **8** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

i To prevent movement of the rear side seat belts in the 2nd row, slide the straps into the guides provided for this purpose.

2nd row rear centre seat belt

The seat belt for the rear centre seat of the 2nd row is incorporated at the rear right of the roof.



Installation

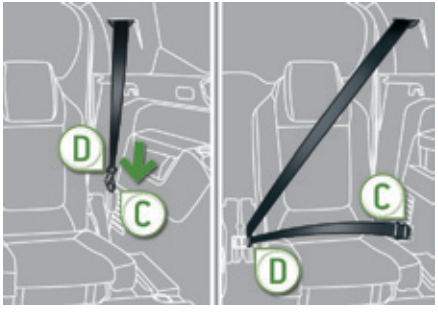
- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** in the right-hand buckle.
- Insert the tongue **B** in the left-hand buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.

Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **B**, then on the buckle **A**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and bring the tongue **B**, then **A** onto the magnet of the attachment point on the roof.

3rd row rear seat belts (7 seat version)

The seat belts for the rear seats of the 3rd row are incorporated at the corner of the corresponding boot pillar and of the roof.



Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **C** in the buckle, on the boot side trim side.
- Insert the tongue **D** in the opposite buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.

Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **D**, then on the buckle **C**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and the tongues **D** and **C**.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on child seats, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

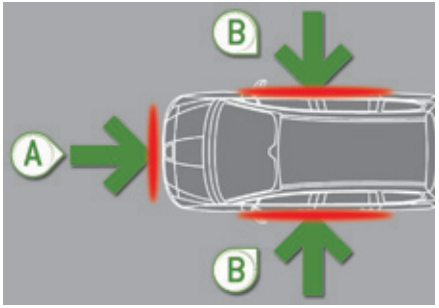
System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

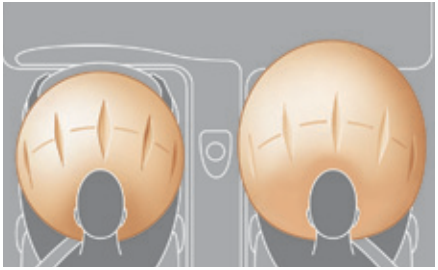


A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- Then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



On switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display. It stays on until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the rearward facing child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

When switching the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, to signal that the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags

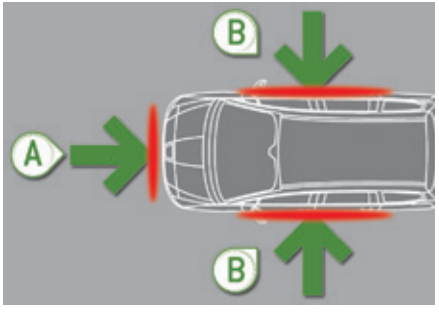
System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front, in the outer side of the seat back frame.



Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

Guidelines to follow:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not allow anything to come between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), do not attach or fix anything near to the airbags or their trajectories when inflating as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Refer to the "Accessories" section.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Do not park or run the engine when stationary in areas where inflammable substances and materials (dry grass, dead leaves...) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system - Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Starting-switching off the engine
Anti-theft protection

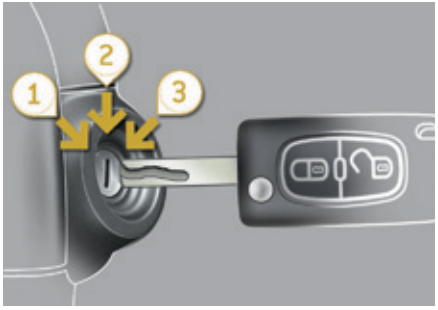
Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised for engine starting to be authorised.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

! In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and/or the display of a message, depending on version.
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

i Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:
- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),
  or
- press the brake pedal firmly (electronic or automatic gearbox),
- insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.
- With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death.
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

For more information, refer to the "Practical information" section, under "Energy economy mode".

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the "Ignition on" position

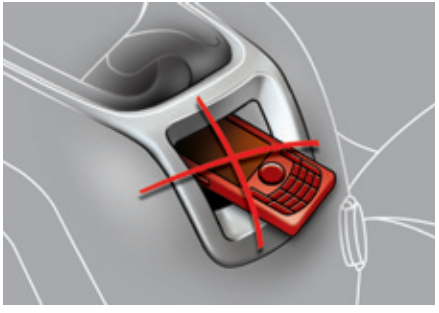
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Electric parking brake



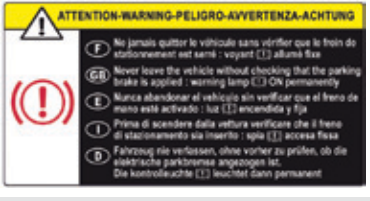
The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **Automatic application/release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator,
- **Manual application/release**
  The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.



! Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone, ...) behind the electric brake control.

Label on the door panel



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake applied indicator lamp is on in the instrument panel.

Deactivating automatic operation

For certain countries of sale, automatic application when the engine is switched off and automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation / deactivation of automatic mode is done via the vehicle configuration menu (automatic mode is on by default).



Deactivation is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

If automatic mode is deactivated, the parking brake is then applied and released **manually**.

i Deactivation is recommended in particularly cold conditions (ice) and when towing (breakdown, caravan...). Where the automatic operation cannot be deactivated, refer to the "Parking the vehicle, brake released" section.

To immobilise the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.

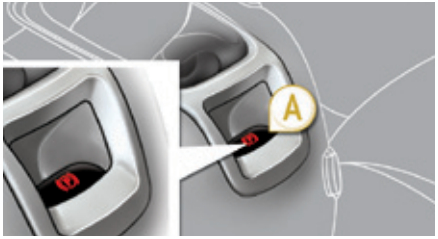
The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the parking braking indicator lamp,
- illumination of the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever **A**,

- display of the "Parking brake applied" message.

When the driver's door is opened, an audible signal heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied (unless the selector lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox).

Manual application



With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** the control lever **A** towards you.
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the parking brake applied indicator lamp,
- illumination of the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever **A**,

- display of the "Parking brake applied" message.

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied (unless the selector lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox).

Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever **A**, are on.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** the control lever **A**.

Full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the parking brake application indicator lamp going off,
- the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever **A** going off,

- the display of the "Parking brake released" message.

If you pull the control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake applied" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on is variable in its effect (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the parking brake applied indicator lamp,
- illumination of the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the "Parking brake applied" message.

The characteristic noise of operation confirms the application of the electric parking brake.

Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake indicator lamp is on in the instrument panel.
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- **Electronic gearbox**: select position **A**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.
- **Automatic gearbox:** select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the parking brake application indicator lamp going off,
- the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever **A** going off,



- the display of the "Parking brake released" message.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Particular situations

Parking the vehicle, brake released

To release the parking brake:

- ☞ Switch the ignition on without starting the engine.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the control lever **A** and the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of the "Parking brake released" message.

Emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) **a continuous pull on the control lever A will stop the vehicle**.

The dynamic stability control (DSC) provides stability during emergency braking.

If there is a fault with the emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on control lever **A**.

! Emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system only operates when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a momentarily when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **A** or **M** on an electronic gearbox,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.

! Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (and the warning lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake) are on fixed (not flashing).



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

8

Operating faults

If the electric parking brake fault warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

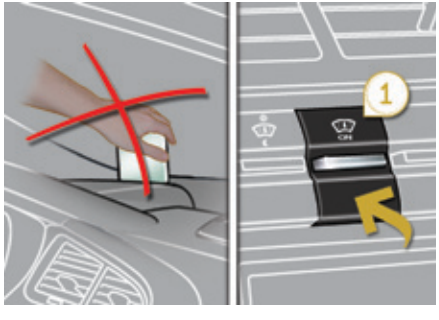
Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. ! To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. ☞ Pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake control fault - auto parking brake activated**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. - The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.
Battery fault 	- If the battery warning lamp comes on you must stop immediately, as soon as the traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, depending on version, place the a chock against one of the wheels). - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

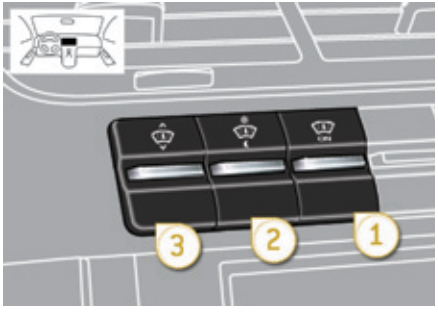
Head-up display



System which projects various information onto a transparent blade in the driver's field of vision so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.
This system operates when the engine is running and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.



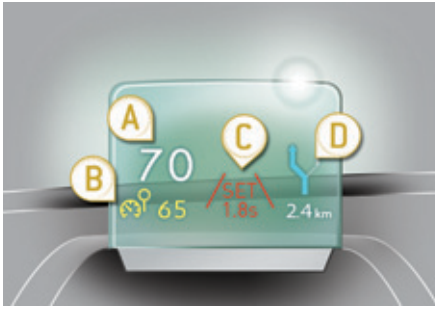
Buttons



1. Head-up display on / off.
2. Brightness adjustment.
3. Display height adjustment.

The blade is activated by pressing one of the buttons.

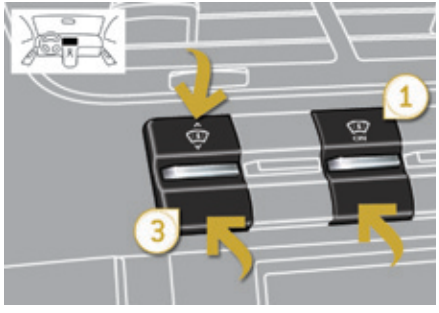
Displays during operation



Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

A. The speed of your vehicle.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
C. "Distance alert" information (depending on version).
D. Navigation information (depending on version).
For more information on the navigation system, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Activation / Deactivation

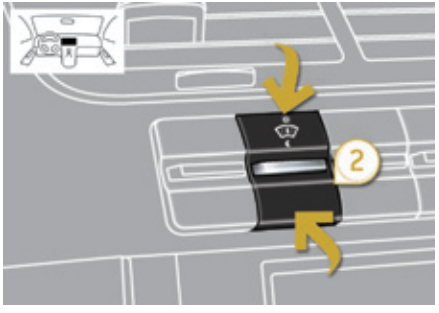


☞ With the engine running, press button **1**. The activated/deactivated status when the engine was switched off is retained when the engine is switched on again.

Height adjustment

☞ With the engine running, adjust the display to the required height using button **3**:
- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment



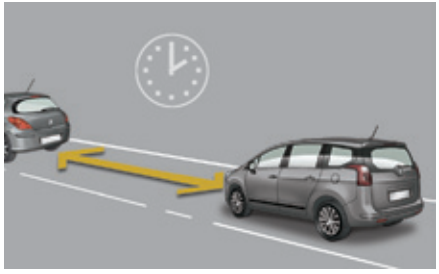
☞ With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information using button **2**:
- up to increase the brightness,
- down to decrease the brightness.

! We recommend that adjustments are only made using these buttons when the vehicle is stationary.
When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the transparent blade (or on its cover) to avoid interfering with the movement of the blade and preventing its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, ...) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Certain glasses (sunglasses, spectacles or polarised lenses) may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the transparent blade, which is made of organic glass, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the blade or damage the anti-reflection coating.

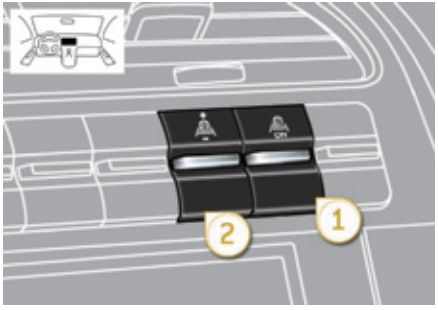
Distance alert*

Driving aid which informs the driver of the time interval (in seconds) separating them from the vehicle in front when the driving conditions are stable.
It does not detect stationary vehicles and does not itself **act** on your vehicle's controls.



For the safety time to be observed, refer to the current legislation or highway code recommendations in your country.
The system operates when the speed of your vehicle is higher than 45 mph (70 km/h) and below 90 mph (150 km/h).
It has a programmable visual alert which remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.
This system is a driving aid and cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of vigilance on the part of the driver.

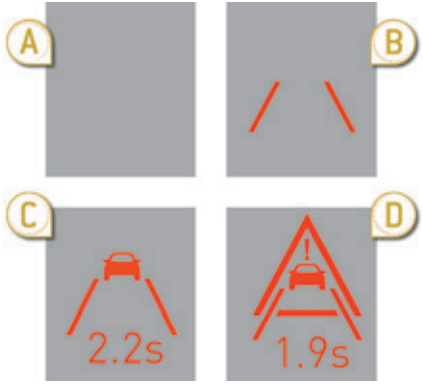
Buttons



1. On / off.
2. Alert value increase (+) / decrease (-).

* Depending on version.

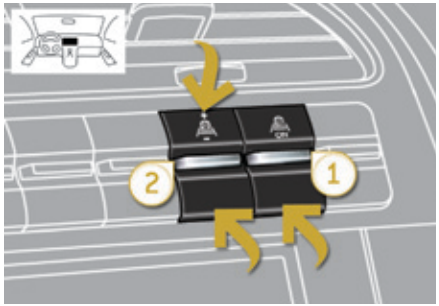
Displays during operation



The information is grouped together in the head-up display.
Once the system has been activated:

A. The speed of your vehicle is outside the operating range.
B. Your vehicle is within the operating range but no vehicle has been detected.
C. The vehicle in front of you has been detected.
The current time separating you from this vehicle is displayed permanently.
D. The time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the programmed alert value (it flashes).

Activation



☞ Press button **1**, the indicator lamp comes on.

The system is activated but will only operate from 45 mph (70 km/h).

Programming the alert value

☞ Select the alert value required using button **2**, in steps of 0.1 second:
- up to increase: "+",
- down to decrease: "-".

Example with a value of 2 seconds:



The alert value can be programmed to between 0.9 second and 2.5 seconds.
The visual alert can be deactivated by programming a value of 0 second.

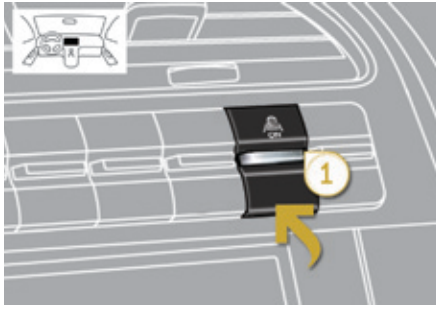
Alert



When the time (in seconds) between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the programmed time (alert value), a visual alert flashes.

! A safety time of 2 seconds is recommended in normal driving conditions (correct traction and speed) to avoid a collision in the event of emergency braking.

Deactivation



☞ Press button **1** to deactivate the system, the indicator lamp goes off.

Reactivation

☞ Press button **1** again to reactivate the system.
The last value programmed is retained and the indicator lamp comes on.

Operating limits

The system switches to standby automatically if the sensor does not detect the vehicle in front correctly (very difficult weather conditions, sensor out of adjustment, ...). A message is displayed in the multifunction screen.
The vehicle being followed may not be detected in certain conditions such as, for example:

- when turning,
- when changing lane,
- when the vehicle in front is either too far ahead (maximum range of the sensor: 100 m) or stationary (in a traffic jam, ...),

When the vehicle being followed is much too near (time between the two vehicles less than 0.5 seconds), the display remains fixed at 0.5 seconds.

! If the indicator lamp in button **1** flashes, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
This system is not an anti-collision radar and it does not act on the movement of your vehicle. It provides information but cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of vigilance on the part of the driver.

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.
When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect unless it is pressed firmly, which allows the programmed speed to be temporarily exceeded.
To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed by releasing the accelerator.

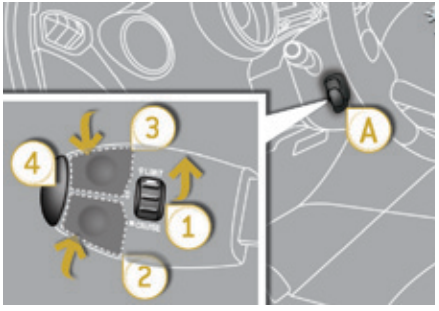
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

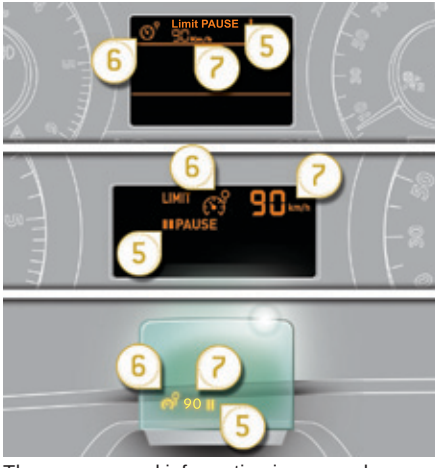
Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection dial
2. Programmed value decrease button
3. Programmed value increase button
4. Speed limiter on / off button

Displays in the instrument panel

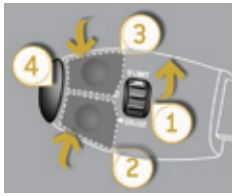


The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on / off indication
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value

This information also appears in the head-up display.
For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.

Programming





☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF/Pause).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.



☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF/Pause).



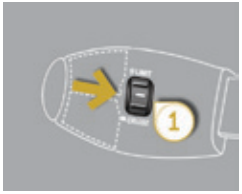
☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed



Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.
The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.
Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

Return to normal driving



☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault



In the event of a speed limiter malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engagement of:

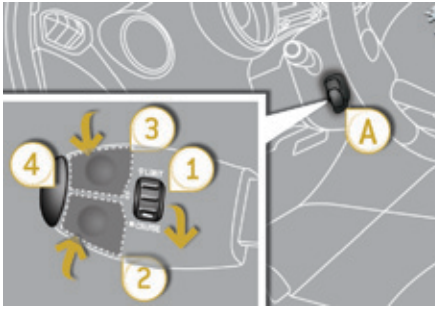
- fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- second gear in manual mode on an electronic or automatic gearbox,
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the DSC/ASR systems for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls

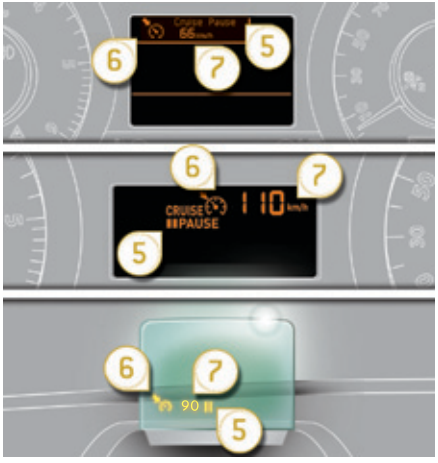


The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Cruise control mode selection wheel
2. Speed programming / programmed value decrease button
3. Speed programming / programmed value increase button
4. Cruise control off / resume button

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel

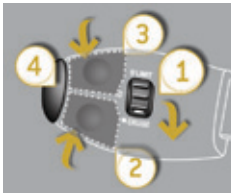


The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off / resume indication
6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value

This information also appears in the head-up display.
For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.

Programming





☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF/Pause).



☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.



☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF/Pause).



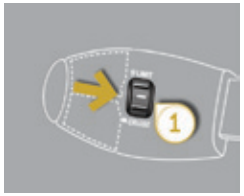
☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed



Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.
Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Return to normal driving



☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault



In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear



☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Electronic gearbox

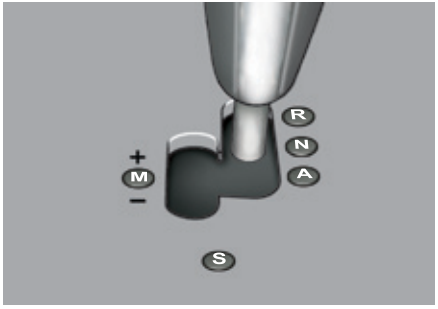
Six-speed electronic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Three driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** mode for sequential changing of the gears by the driver,
- **auto sequential** mode to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

A **Sport** function is available in automatic or sequential mode for a more dynamic style of driving.

Gear lever



R. Reverse

☞ With your foot on the brake, move the lever upwards to select this position.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.

A. Automatic mode.

☞ Move the lever downwards to select this mode.

M. + / - Manual mode with manual sequential changing of the gears.

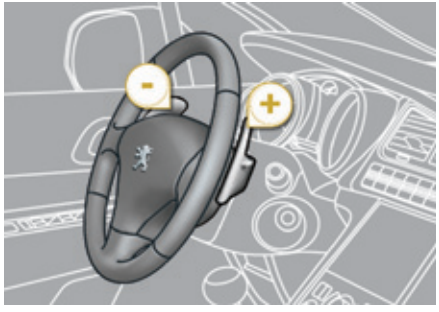
☞ Move the lever downwards then to the left to select this mode, then:

- push the lever forwards to change up a gear,
- or pull the lever rearwards to change down a gear.

S. Sport setting.

☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate this function.

Steering mounted controls



+. Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or engage or disengage reverse gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



Gear lever positions

When you move the lever, the symbol corresponding to its position is displayed in the instrument panel.

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Gears in sequential mode

AUTO. This comes on when the automatic mode is selected. It goes off on changing to sequential mode.

S. Sport (Sport setting)

☞ Place your **foot on the brake** when this warning lamp flashes (e.g.: when starting the engine).

i There is an audible signal when reverse gear is engaged.

Moving off

☞ Select position **N**.

☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.

☞ Start the engine.

i If the engine does not start:

- If **N** is flashing in the instrument panel, move the lever to position **A** then to position **N**.
- If the message "**Foot on brake**" is displayed, press the brake pedal firmly.

☞ Keep your foot on the brake pedal, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M** to go forwards, or **R** to go backwards.

☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal, you can then move off.

☞ The parking brake is released automatically, otherwise release it manually.

8



AUTO and **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel screen.

! If position **R**, **A** or **M** is selected, even with the engine at idle, if the brakes are released the vehicle moves without any action on the accelerator. Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance on the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **N**.

Manual mode

☞ When the vehicle has moved off, select position **M** to change to manual mode for sequential gear changing.



AUTO disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.
It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow vehicle to pull away in the correct gear.

i At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. The **Foot on brake** warning lamp may flash in the instrument panel to prompt you to brake.
At high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator lamp will flash and the gearbox will change to neutral automatically. To engage a gear again, return the lever to position **A** or **M**.

! On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.
Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

Automatic mode

☞ Following use of manual mode, select position **A** to return to automatic mode.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox is then operating in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear in relation to the following parameters:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

Auto sequential mode

This mode enables you to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of manual mode.

☞ Operate the **+** or **-** steering mounted paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits. **AUTO** is still displayed in the instrument panel.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Sport setting

☞ Following selection of the sequential mode or automatic mode, press button **S** to activate the Sport setting which offers you a more dynamic style of driving.



S appears next to the gear engaged in the instrument panel screen.

☞ Press button **S** again to return to normal settings.

S is then cleared from the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox returns to normal mode automatically each time the ignition is switched off.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, it is essential that you apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, it is essential to place the gear lever in neutral **N**.
Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault

With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and **AUTO** flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a fault with the gearbox.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! It is essential to press the brake pedal when starting the engine.
When parking, is it essential to apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, whatever the circumstances.

! When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, drive at walking speed.

"Porsche Tiptronic System" automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.
Four driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Button "❄" **(snow)**.

Gear lever



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M + / -. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

☞ Press forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Press rearwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (Automatic driving)
S. **Sport** programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation
-. Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
☞ Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

A message is displayed if you try to move the gear lever from position **P** to another position without pressing the brake pedal.

If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine.
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.
This programme improves the vehicle's ability to move off and traction when grip is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.
The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

You risk damaging the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

On BlueHDi Diesel 136 and 150 versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions. In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

Example:
- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

* Depending on engine.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

The **"ECO"** indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with a manual gearbox,** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary with PureTech 130 and BlueHDi 115 and 120 versions, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,

- **with an electronic gearbox**, at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or you put the gear selector in position **N**,

- **with an automatic gearbox,** vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or you put the gear selector in position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

For your comfort, during parking maoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the vehicle is stopped on a steep slope (up or down),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case, the **"ECO"** indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

The **"ECO"** indicator lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you fully depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you put the gear selector in position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.
- **with an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you put the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

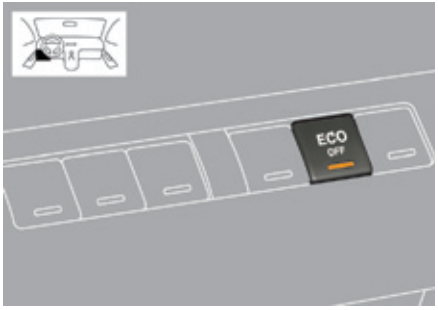
START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 18 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox, 2 mph (3 km/h) with the PureTech 130 and BlueHDi 115 and 120 versions, 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

In this case the **"ECO"** indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.
This is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the switch coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

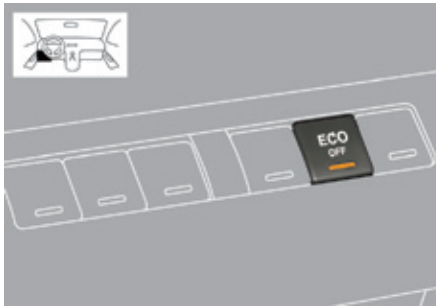
If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the switch going off and a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



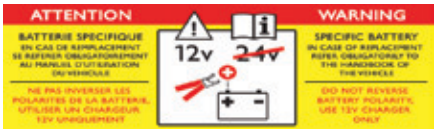
In the event of a fault with the system, the indicator lamp in the **"ECO OFF"** switch flashes then comes on continuously.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

When driving on flooded roads or crossing a ford, switch off the Stop & Start and drive at walking speed.

Maintenance

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from PEUGEOT dealers).
Fitting a battery not listed by PEUGEOT introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.
To charge the battery, use a 12 V charger and observe the polarity.



The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. For any work on the system go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment required, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.
A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).
The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

! The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label (see the "Identification markings" section).
The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.





In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold. If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.
  or
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).

The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.
The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

Operating fault

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

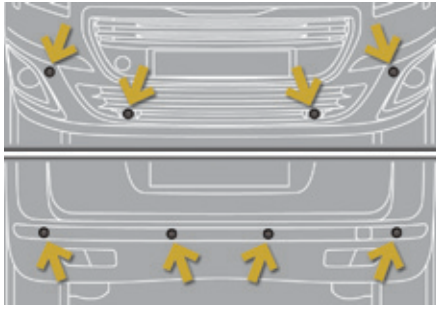
This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

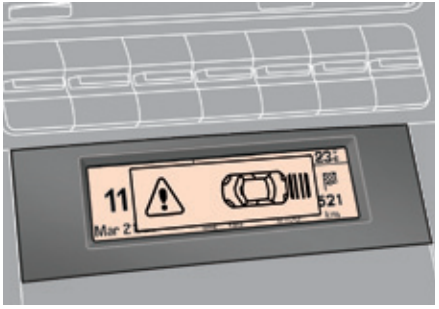
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Visual and audible front and rear parking sensors



System consisting of four proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.
It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.



The parking sensors are **switched on**:
- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and display of the vehicle in the multifunction screen.



The proximity information is indicated by:
- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- an image in the multifunction screen, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the version of multifunction screen.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.

The parking sensors are **switched off**:
- when you come out of reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

The parking sensor system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Deactivation



☞ Press button **A**, the warning lamp comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Reactivation

☞ Press button **A** again, the warning lamp switches off, the system is reactivated.

Operating fault

If an operating fault occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep), when reverse gear is engaged.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. When the vehicle is being driven at a speed below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sources of noise (motorcycles, lorries, pneumatic drills, ...) may trigger the parking sensor audible signals.

Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The colour image is provided in the navigation screen.

! This system is a driving aid that does not replace vigilance on the part of the driver, who must remain in control of the vehicle at all times.

i Clean the lens of the reversing camera regularly using a sponge and a soft cloth.
When cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, keep the end of the lance at least 30 cm from the camera lens.



The green lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.

The red lines represent around 30 cm beyond the limit of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The blue lines represent the maximum turning circle.

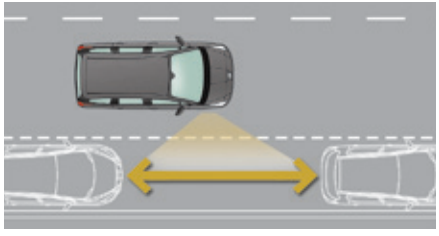
i The lines displayed in the screen do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (for example: vehicles nearby).
Some deformation of the image is normal.

8

Parking space sensors

After measuring the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles, this system gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances needed for manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.



The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measurement are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measurement phase has ended,
- **flashing:** measurement is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can activate the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A**. The fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

Operation

You have identified a parking space:

- ☞ Press button **A** to activate the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During the measuring, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approximately 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.
  The system then measures the size of the space.
- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message in the multifunction screen accompanied by an audible signal.

The function displays the following types of message:

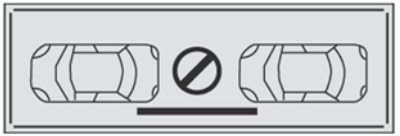
Parking possible



Parking difficult



Parking not advised



The function deactivates itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- five minutes after activation of the function or after the last measurement operation,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approximately 70 km/h) for one minute.

! If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too great, the system may not operate.

i
- The function remains available after each measurement and so can measure a number of places successively.
- In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.
- The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking sensors during the space measuring phase when you are in forward gear.

If there is a malfunction, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



▶ **208 HYbrid FE, a technology demonstrator with exceptional characteristics: 1.9 l/100 km (148.7 mpg) and 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) in 8 seconds.**

PEUGEOT & TOTAL,

A PARTNERSHIP TO DELIVER BETTER PERFORMANCE!

Innovation, the key to success

The TOTAL Research and Development and PEUGEOT teams work together to develop high quality lubricants that meet the requirements of PEUGEOT vehicles. For you, this is the assurance that the performance of your engine is optimised while also ensuring its durability.
The 208 HYbrid FE demonstrates the ability of PEUGEOT and TOTAL to develop innovative technologies and provide other ways of moving towards the future.

Reduced exhaust emissions, a true reality

TOTAL lubricants are formulated to optimise the efficiency of engines and the protection of the emissions post-treatment systems. It is important to observe the servicing recommendations made by PEUGEOT to assure correct operation.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level



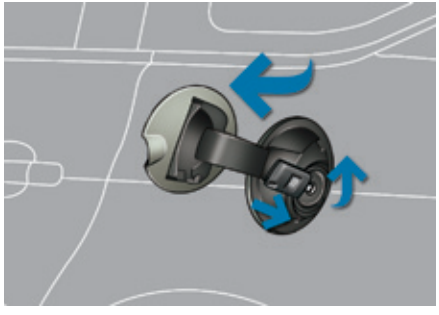
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen. When the lamp first comes on, there is **approximately 6 litres** of fuel remaining.
Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. When driving, this audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**.

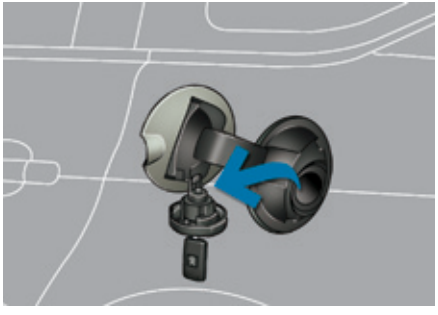
You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.
If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

Refuelling

A label affixed to the inside of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.
More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is put back on the tank.
Opening the cap may trigger an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is completely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.





To fill the tank safely:

- **the engine must be switched off,**
- open the fuel filler flap,
- insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,
- remove the cap and secure it on the hook, located on the inside of the flap,
- fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

When refuelling is complete:

- put the cap back in place,
- turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- close the filler flap.

Operating fault

A malfunction of the fuel gauge is indicated by the return to zero of the fuel gauge needle. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Fuel used for petrol engines



The petrol engines are compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.
E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

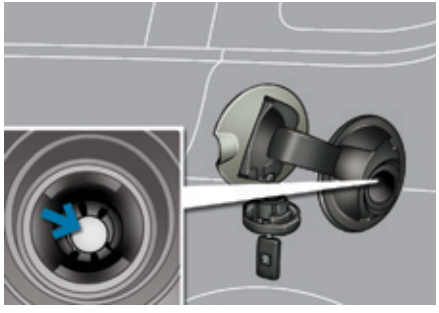


The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).
B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

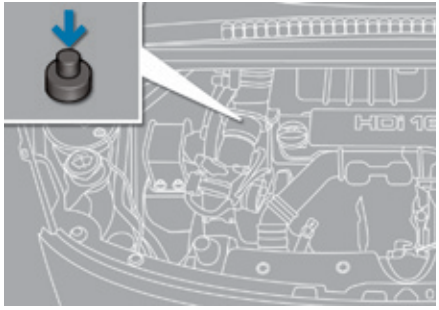
It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)



On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

Other engines

- ☞ Add at least five litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

i For more information on the Diesel misfuel prevention device, refer to the corresponding section.

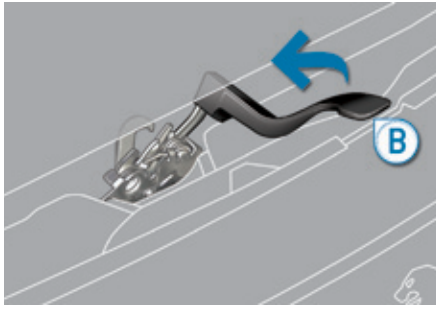
If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

Bonnet

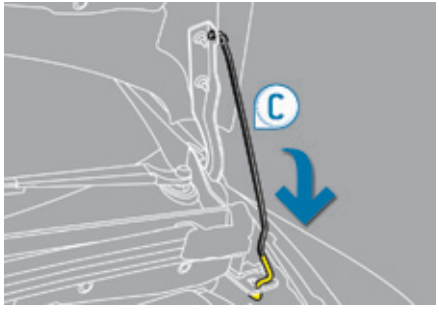
Opening



- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.
Do not open the bonnet in high winds.
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

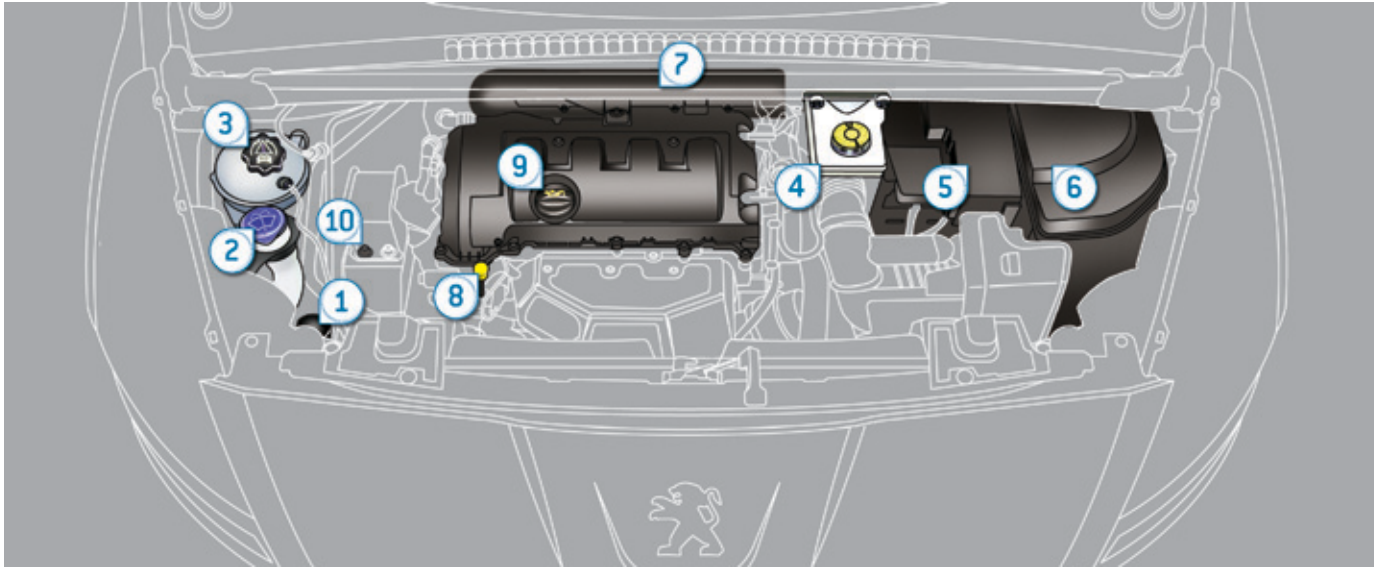
Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Underbonnet - petrol engines

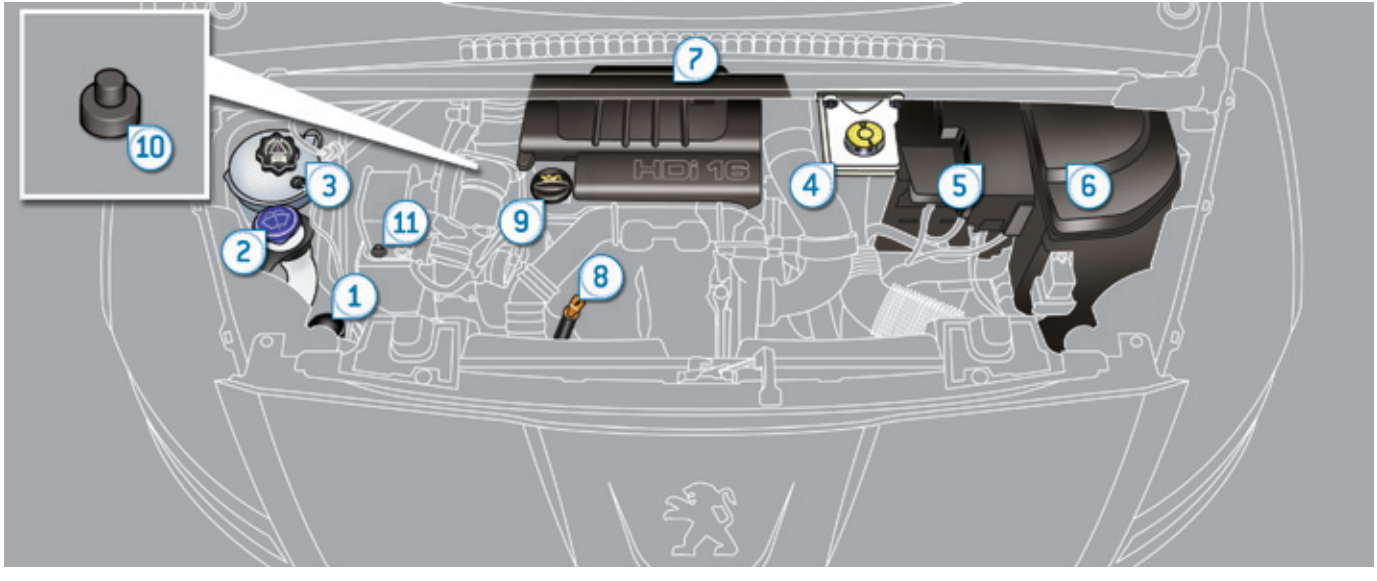
The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.



1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Earth point ("-" terminal).

Underbonnet - Diesel engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.



1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Earth point ("-" terminal).

* Depending on engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

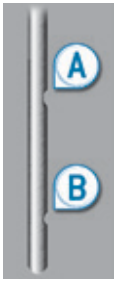
☞ Locate the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

For more information on the petrol or Diesel engine, refer to the corresponding section.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

9

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping-up the engine oil level

- ☞ Locate the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

For more information on the petrol or Diesel engine, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping-up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.
Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

In wintry conditions, the use of an ethyl alcohol or methanol base fluid is recommended.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle filter)



A low additive level is indicated by illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

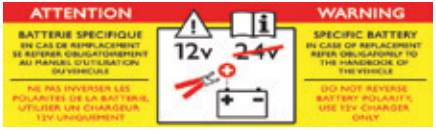
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.
Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.
For more information on checking levels, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

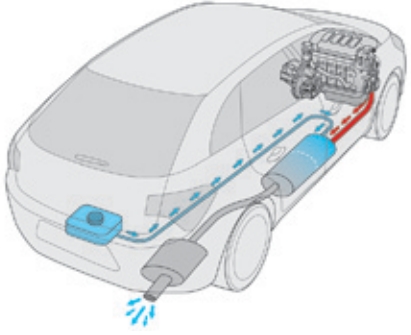
For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® additive and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

Presentation of the SCR system

Using an additive called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® additive is held in a special tank located under the boot at the rear of the vehicle. It has a capacity of 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® additive tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the necessary top-up carried out.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

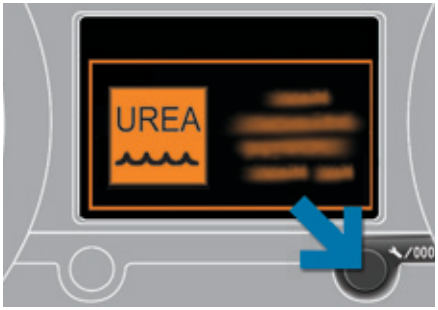
Range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button displays the driving range temporarily.
Above 3 000 miles (5 000 km), the value is not specified.

9

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)





When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)





When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive





When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

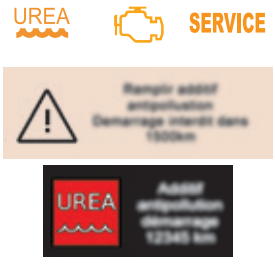
! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required.
If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

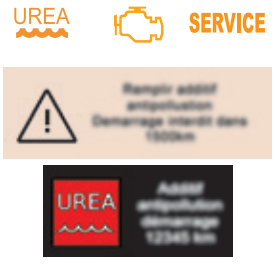
In the event of the detection of a fault



The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Freezing of the AdBlue® additive

The AdBlue® additive freezes at temperatures below around -11°C. The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Topping-up the AdBlue® additive

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the additive between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.
You can got to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions in use

The AdBlue® additive is an urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the product. Ammonia vapour has en irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® additive that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute the additive with water.
Never pour the additive into the Diesel fuel tank.



AdBlue®

The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies toping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

9

Recommendations on storage

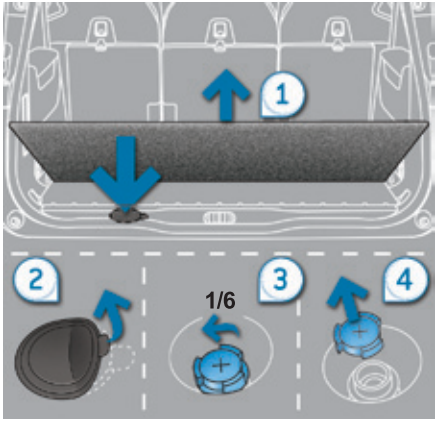
AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the additive can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.



☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, fold the left hand concertina boot floor and, on 7-seat versions, unfold the left hand seat in the third row.

☞ Lift the cut-out in the boot carpet.
☞ Unclip the black plastic blanking plug using a lever.

☞ Insert your fingers into the aperture and turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Carefully lift off the cap, without dropping it.



☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! Important: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Refit the black plastic blanking plug, clipping it in place.
☞ Lower the cut-out in the boot carpet.
☞ Unfold and reposition the concertina floor.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of additive**, signalled by the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented", you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle or introducing the key into the ignition switch**.
Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

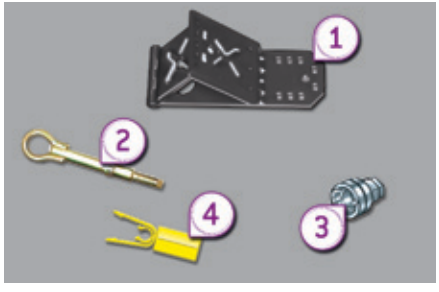
Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with your vehicle. The content depends on your vehicle's equipment (temporary puncture repair kit or spare wheel)

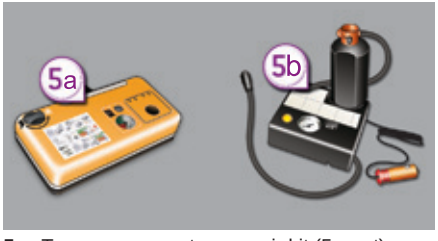
> ! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

List of tools



1. A chock to immobilise the vehicle in the event of a flat battery (depending on equipment).
2. Removable towing eye.
   See the "Towing the vehicle" section.
3. Socket for the security bolts (stowed in the glove box) (depending on equipment).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.
4. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment).
   For removing the finisher caps from the heads of the wheel bolts with alloy wheels.

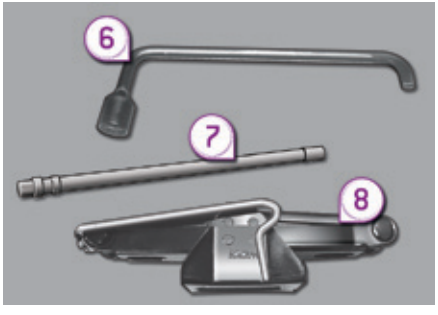
For versions without spare wheel:



5a. Temporary puncture repair kit (5-seat).

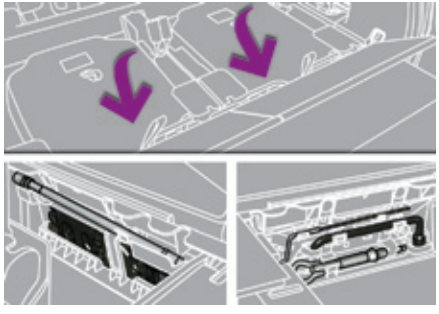
5b. Temporary puncture repair kit (7-seat).
Comprises a 12 V compressor and a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a puncture and can be used for adjusting tyre pressure.
See the "Temporary puncture repair kit" section.

For versions with spare wheel:



6. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
7. Wheelbrace extension.
   For unwinding/winding up the spare wheel carrier drive.
8. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.

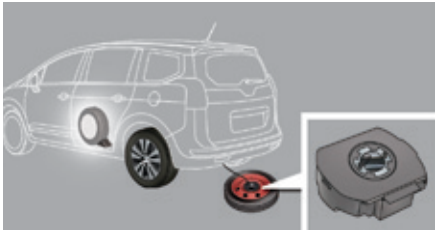
Access to the tools



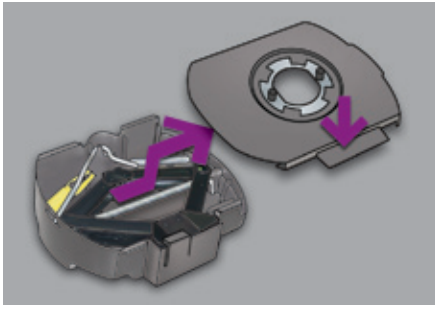
Tools **1**, **2**, **6** and **7** are stowed in the interior boot trim.
To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the concertina boards.

The temporary puncture repair kit **5a** is stowed in the boot, under the right hand concertina boards; the kit **5b** is stowed in the boot, under the left hand seat in the third row.



The tools **4** and **8** are stowed in a box, in the middle of the spare wheel secured underneath the vehicle. Remove the spare wheel for access to it.
See the "Changing a wheel" section.

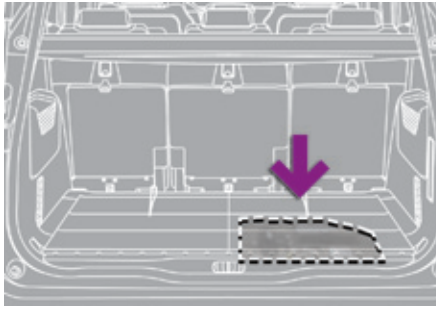


- ☞ Press the tab, slide the lid of the box half way and remove it.

Temporary puncture repair kit (5-seat version)

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Access to the kit

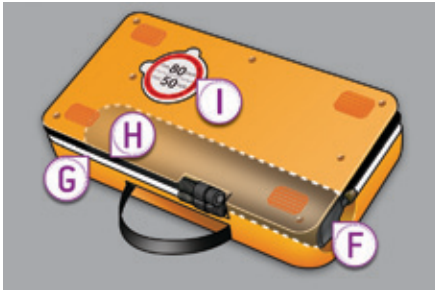


The kit is stowed in the boot under the concertina board.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

Description of the kit





A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar and psi).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

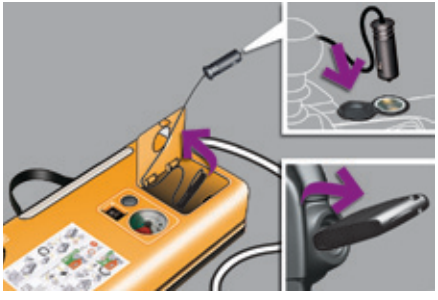
1. Sealing



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

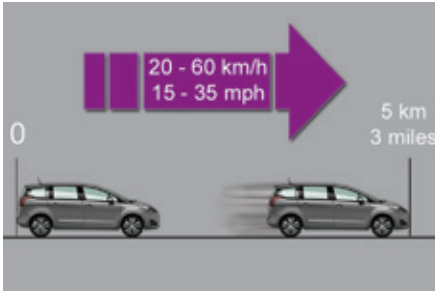
Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.
  The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).



- Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.
  Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

! If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

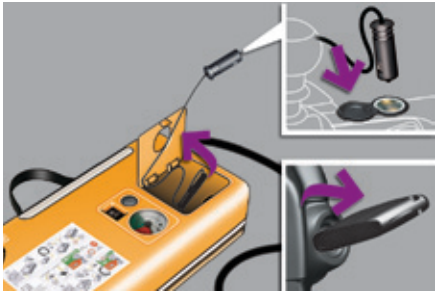
Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

2. Inflation



- Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



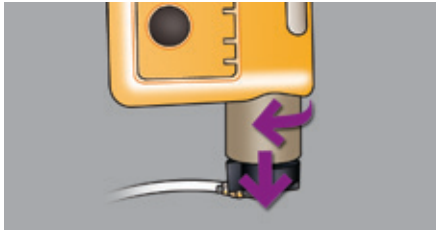
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).
  A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

As soon as possible, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

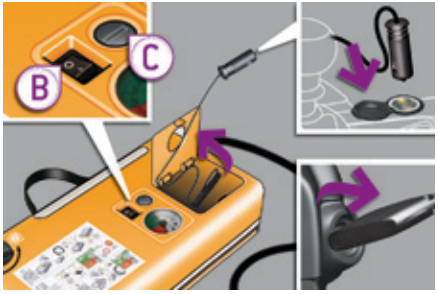
Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:
- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.
If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.



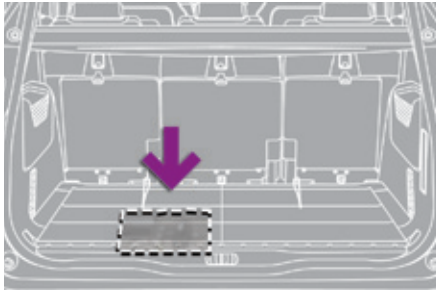


- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

10

Temporary puncture repair kit (7-seat version)

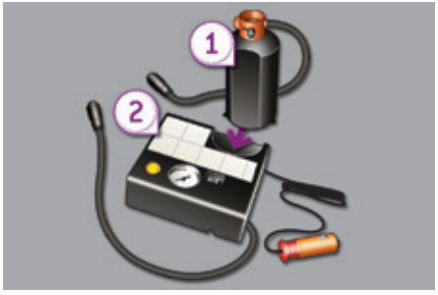
This kit comprises a compressor and a bottle of sealant.
It permits **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You can then drive to the nearest garage.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the tyre pressure.



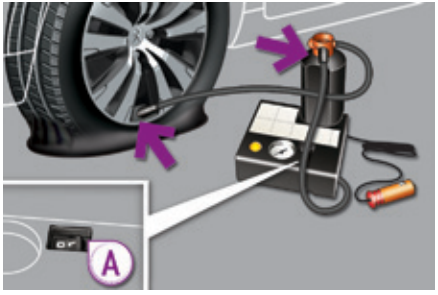
The kit is stowed in the boot, under the left hand seat in the 3rd row.

i It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, only where located on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

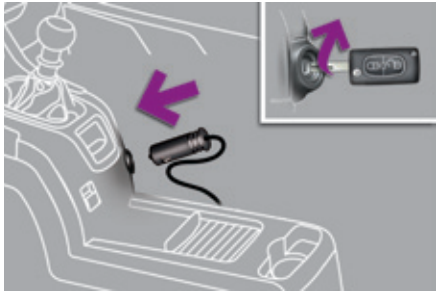
Using the kit



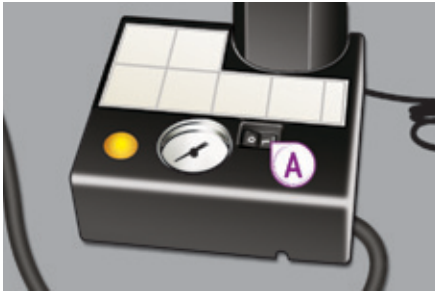
- Switch off the ignition.
- Tick the wheel to be repaired on the speed limitation sticker enclosed then affix the sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
- Clip the bottle **1** on the compressor **2**.



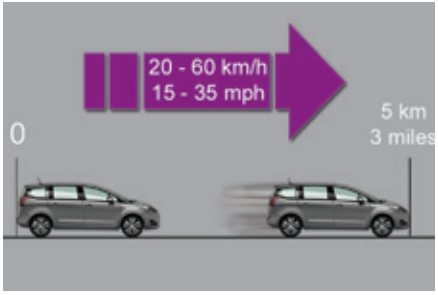
- Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position **"0"**.
- Connect the pipe of the bottle **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
- Unwind the pipe of the compressor **2** fully, then connect it to the bottle.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



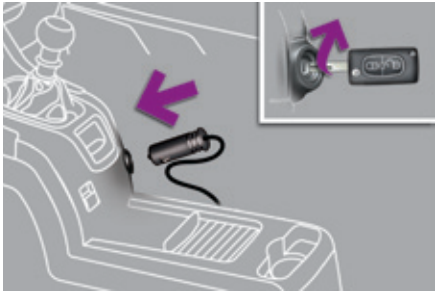
- Switch on the compressor by tilting the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



- Remove the compressor and store the bottle in the plastic bag, supplied in the kit, to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.
- Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 10 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the pressure.

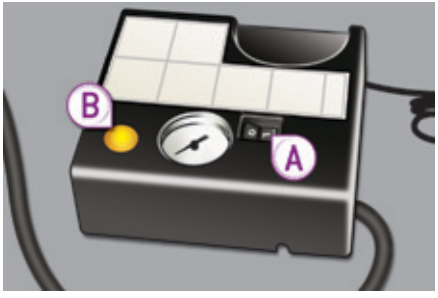


☞ Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.



☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.

☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position **"1"**; to deflate: switch **A** in position **"0"** and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).

☞ Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.

☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) for no more than approximately 125 miles (200 km).

☞ Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.

i If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop to have your vehicle repaired.

Changing a wheel

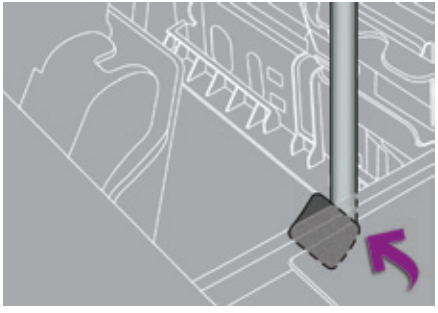
Procedure for removing a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre and fitting the spare wheel, using the tools supplied wih the vehicle.
See the "Tool kit" section.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is supported by a cable-driven carrier underneath the vehicle.

Taking out the wheel

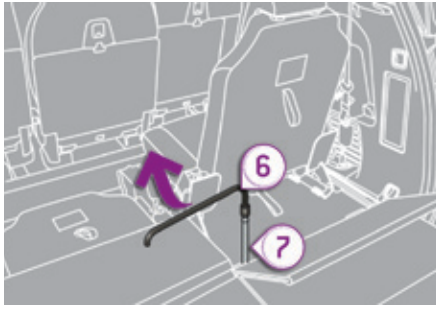


- ☞ Raise the concertina board.
- ☞ Raise the cut-out in the boot carpet for access to the spare wheel carrier drive nut.

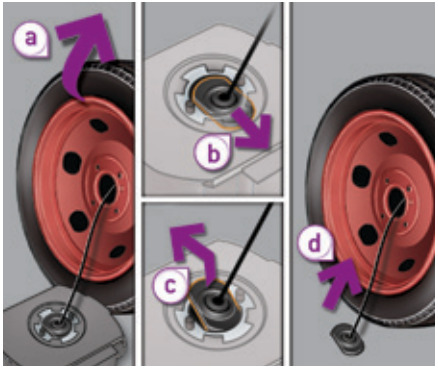
! Take care, the bottle of fluid contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the base of the bottle.
The bottle is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant product, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the tyre under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The jack must only be used to replace a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.



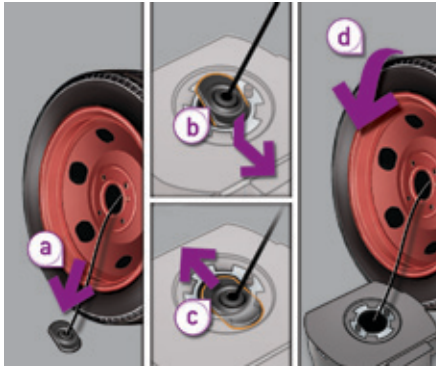
- Place the extension **7** onto the spare wheel carrier drive nut.
- Fit the wheelbrace **6** to the end of the extension **7**.
- Turn the assembly fully clockwise to unwind the carrier cable, until the spare wheel is resting flat on the ground.



- Detach the wheel/box assembly from the rear of the vehicle.
- Straighten the wheel for acces to the tool box.
- Remove the link piece from the lid of the tool box, as shown in the illustration.
- Pass the link piece through the hub of the wheel.

! When the spare wheel is fitted in place of a wheel with a punctured tyre, it is essential to return the carrier and tool box to their position under the vehicle, before moving off.
Refer to the "Putting the carrier and spare wheel back in place" section.

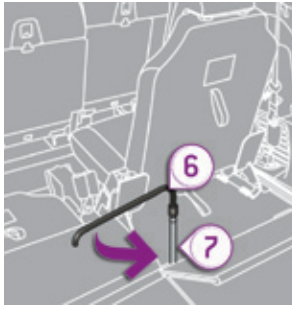
Putting the carrier and spare wheel back in place



This procedure is to be carried out with or without the spare wheel. Without the spare wheel, skip steps **a** and **d**.
Only a "space-saver" type can be secured under the vehicle in the carrier.

- ☞ Store the tools used in the box and close the cover.
- ☞ Position the box on the ground close to the back of the vehicle.
- ☞ Straighten the wheel and pass the link piece through the hub of the wheel.
- ☞ Insert the link piece through the aperture in the tool box lid, as shown in the illustration.
- ☞ Centre the spare wheel on the tool box.





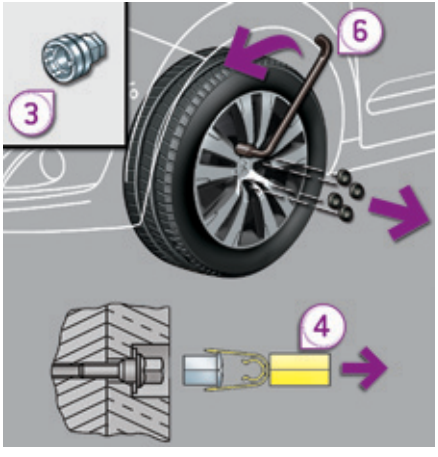


- ☞ Place the assembly of wheel and tool box under the rear of the vehicle.
- ☞ Raise the wheel and tool box by turning the carrier drive nut anticlockwise using the wheelbrace **6** and the extension **7**.
- ☞ Tighten fully and check that the wheel is horizontally flush against the floor.

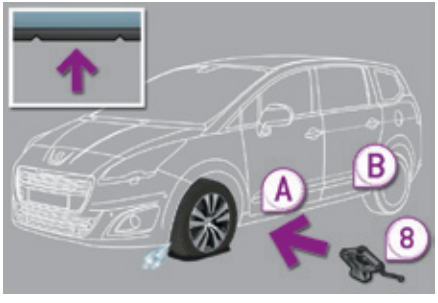
Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode.
Switch off the ignition.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to block the wheels.
With an electronic gearbox, place the lever in position **R** to block the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in position **P** to block the wheels.
Check that the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the parking brake control come on.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

Removing a wheel



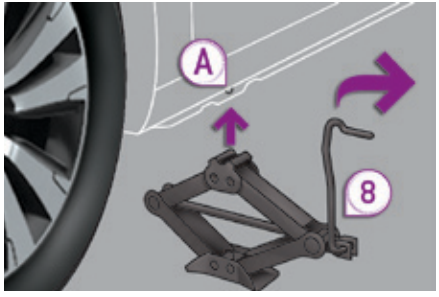
- Depending on equipment, clip the tool **4** to the finisher cap on each wheel bolt with alloy wheels to remove them.
- Depending on equipment, slacken the security bolt using the socket **3** fitted to the wheelbrace **6**.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **6**.



- Position the foot of the jack **8** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below one of the front **A** or rear **B** jacking points provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

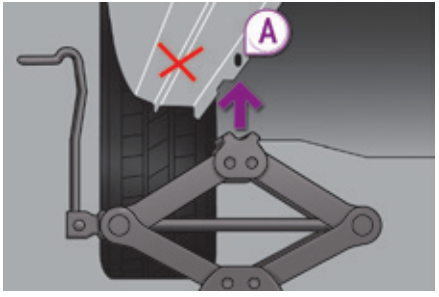
Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim using the wheelbrace **6** by pulling at the valve cut-out.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim by placing its cut-out at the valve, and press round its edge with the palm of your hand.



☞ Extend the jack until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B**; the contact area **A** or **B** must be correctly engaged with the middle of the head of the jack.

! Do not use:
- the jack for any purpose other than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.



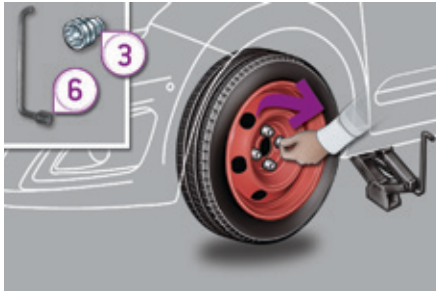
☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack might slip or drop - Risk of injury! Position the jack only at a jacking point **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact area on the vehicle is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping - Risk of injury!



☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
☞ Remove the wheel.

Fitting a wheel



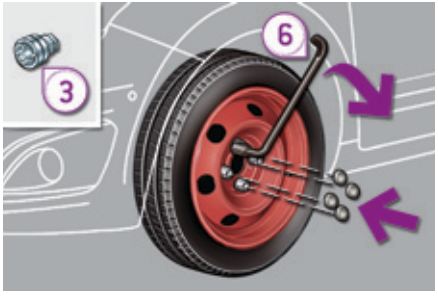
- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts fully by hand.
- Using the wheelbrace **6** fitted with the security socket **3**, pre-tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **6** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **8** and detach it.

Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



- Using the wheelbrace **6** fitted with the security socket **3**, tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **6**.
- Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.

Following a puncture

The punctured wheel cannot be stowed under the vehicle. It must be stowed in the boot. Use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.
When driving with the "space-saver" type spare wheel fitted, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Snow chains must only be fitted to the front wheels. Further, they must never be fitted to a "space-saver" spare wheel.
Before fitting the snow chains, interchange the "space-saver" spare wheel fitted at the front with the wheel at the rear on the same side.

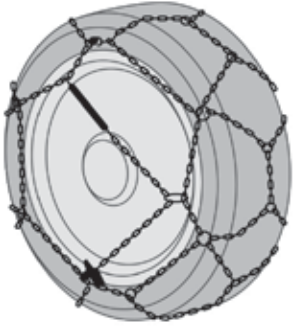
Tyre under-inflation detection

The space-saver type or steel spare wheel does not have a sensor.
The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.



It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
215/55 R16	9 mm
215/50 R17	
215/45 R18	

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

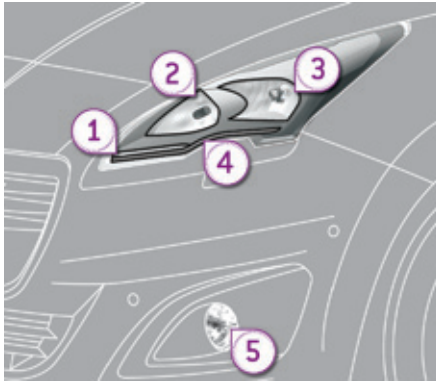
- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Changing a bulb

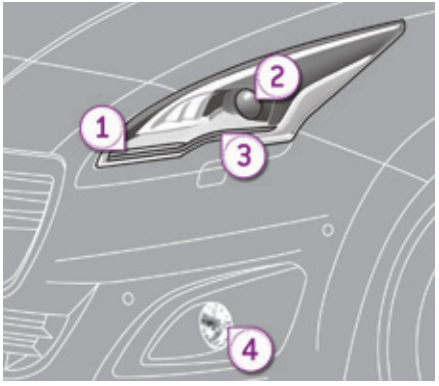
Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Main beam headlamps (HB3).**
3. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
4. **Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
5. **Foglamps (PS24W).**

Model with xenon and directional headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Dipped / main beam directional headlamps (D1S).**
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
4. **Foglamps (PS24W).**

! Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S) must be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

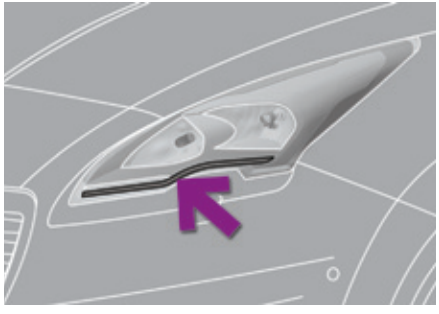
Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.

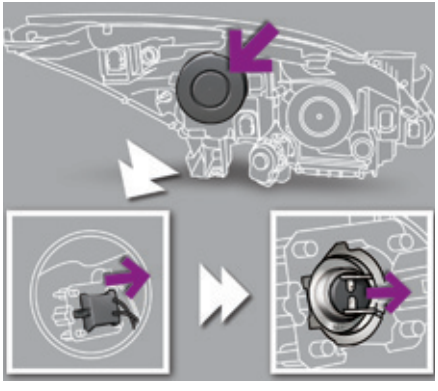
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Changing direction indicators and daytime running lamps / sidelamps



For the replacement of these LED (light-emitting diode) lamps, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

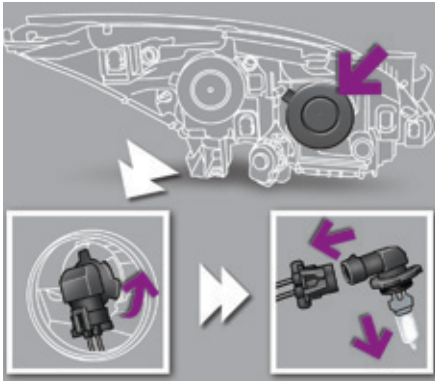
Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (models with halogen headlamps)



- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Extract the bulb by pulling and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (model with halogen headlamps)



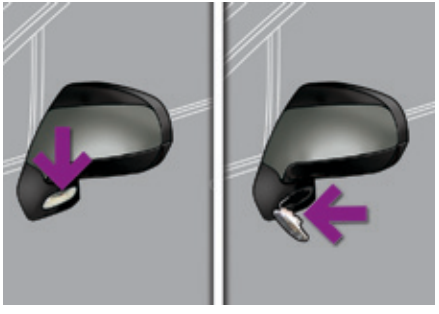
- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Without disconnecting the connector, turn the body of the bulb a quarter of a turn to the left to disengage the assembly.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector to release the bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing dipped beam and main beam headlamp bulbs (models with xenon headlamps)

D1S xenon bulbs must be changed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.
It is recommended that all D1S bulbs are changed at the same time if one of them fails.

Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

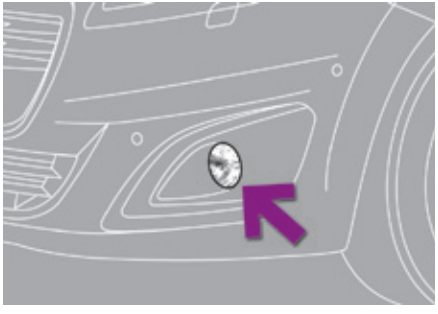


- Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- Disconnect the repeater connector.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a new repeater.

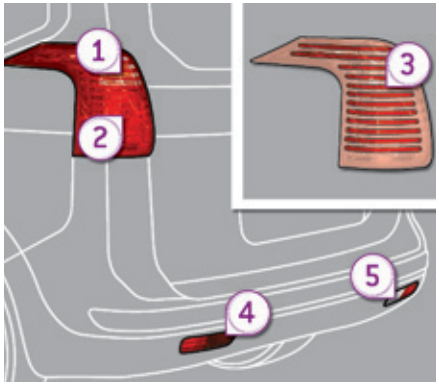
You can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have these lamps changed.

Changing foglamp bulbs



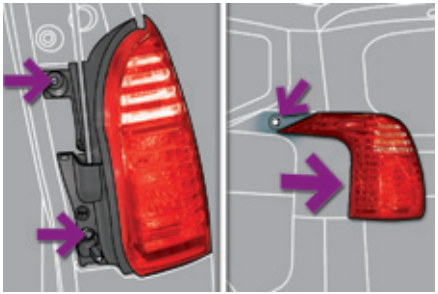
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps

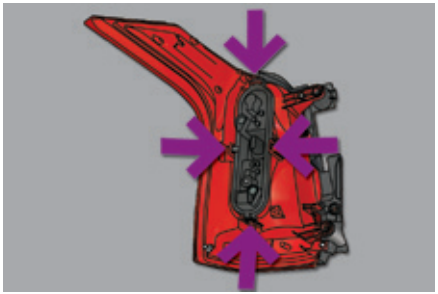


1. **Direction indicators (PY21W-21W).**
2. **Brake lamps (P21W-21W).**
3. **Sidelamps (LEDs).**
4. **Reversing lamp (P21W).**
5. **Foglamp (P21W).**

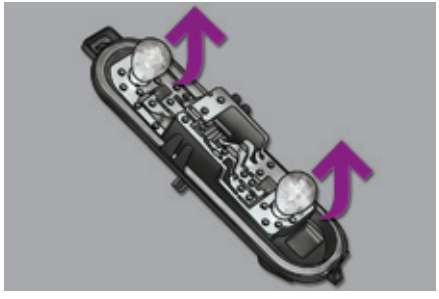
Changing brake lamp and direction indicator bulbs



- ☞ Remove the two lamp unit fixing nuts.
- ☞ Pull the lamp rearwards (a positioning lug retains the lamp).
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.



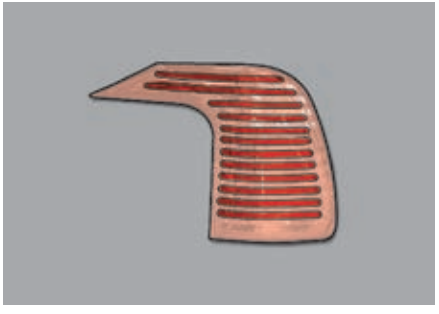
- ☞ Press the four tabs and remove the bulb holder.



☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

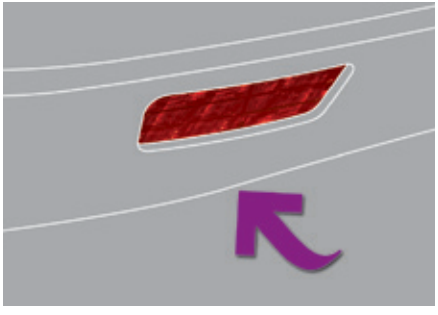
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing sidelamps (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

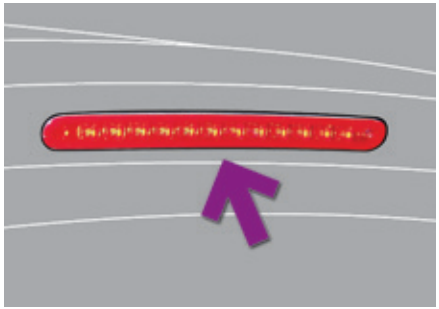
Changing foglamp or reversing lamp bulbs



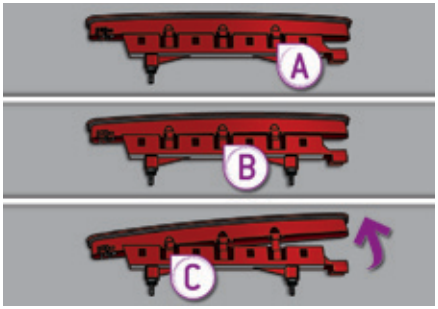
☞ Reach under the bumper.

☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

Changing the third brake lamp bulb (5W5)

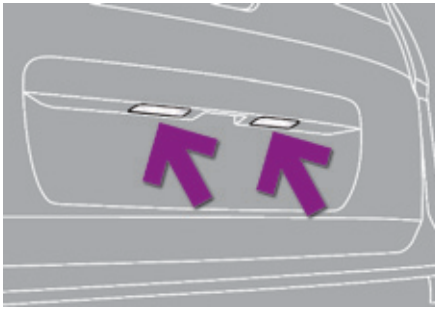


- Open the boot and remove the upper tailgate seal.
- Remove the centre tailgate trim.
- Unscrew the two nuts using a 10 mm spanner.
- Press the threaded pins while supporting the lamp from the outside.
- Close the tailgate.
- Disconnect the lamp connector then the screenwash pipe to remove the lens.



- Press the pairs of clips **A** then **B** then **C** to detach the bulb holders.

Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)

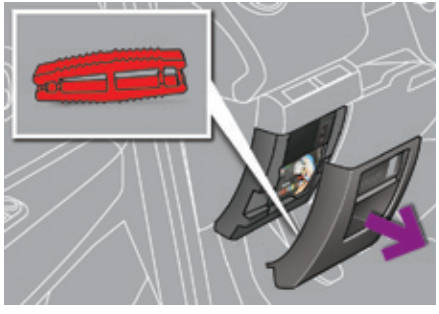


- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

Changing a fuse

Procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

Access to the tools



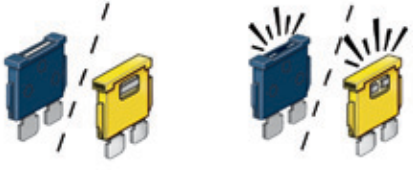
The extraction tweezer is fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.
To gain access to it:

- ☞ Remove the cover completely.
- ☞ Remove the tweezer.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

- ☞ Identify the failed fuse by checking the condition of its filament.



Good **Failed**

- ☞ Use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing.
- ☞ Always replace the faulty fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- ☞ Check that the number marked on the fusebox, the rating marked on the fuse and the following tables all agree.

! The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction on your vehicle.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i **Installing electrical accessories**

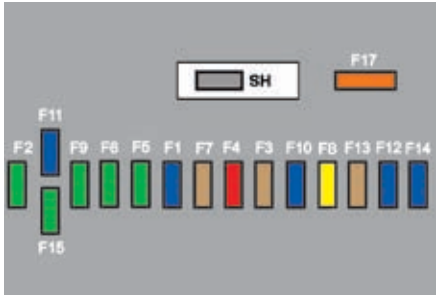
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard.



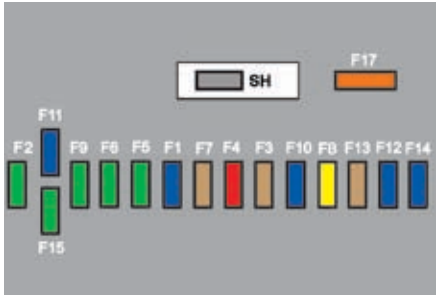


Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	**15**	Rear wiper.
F2	**-**	Not used.
F3	**5**	Airbag control unit.
F4	**10**	Electrochrome rear view mirror, air conditioning, switching and protection unit, rear multimedia.
F5	**30**	Front one-touch electric windows.
F6	**30**	Rear one-touch electric windows.
F7	**5**	Front and rear courtesy lamps, map reading lamps, rear reading lamps, sun visor lighting, glove box lighting, centre armrest lighting, boot 12 V relay control.

Access to the fuses

☞ Refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F8	20	Audio equipment, audio/telephone, CD changer, multifunction screen, tyre under-inflation detection, alarm siren, alarm control unit, telematic unit.
F9	30	Front 12 V socket, cigarette lighter, rear 12 V socket.
F10	15	Steering mounted controls.
F11	15	Low current ignition switch.
F12	15	Trailer presence, rain / sunshine sensor, supply for fuses F32, F34, F35.
F13	5	Engine fusebox, airbag control unit.
F14	15	Instrument panel, instrument panel screen, supply for fuse F33.
F15	30	Locking and deadlocking.
F17	40	Heated rear screen, supply for fuse F30.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F30	**5**	Heated door mirrors.
F31	**30**	Boot 12 V socket.
F32	**5**	Electronic gearbox gear lever.
F33	**10**	Head-up display, Bluetooth system, air conditioning.
F34	**5**	Seat belt warning lamp display.
F35	**10**	Parking sensors, Hi-Fi amplifier authorisation.
F36	**10**	Trailer fusebox control unit, driver's door control pad.
F37	**20**	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F38	**30**	Driver's electric seat.
F39	**20**	Panoramic sunroof blind.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.



Access to the fuses

- Unclip the cover.
- Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



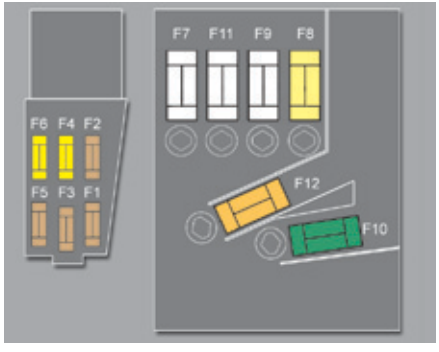
Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	15	Horn.
F3	10	Front / rear wash-wipe.
F4	10	Daytime running lamps.
F5	15	Purge canister, turbine discharge and Turbo pressure regulation electrovalves (1.6 litre THP), oil vapour heater (1.6 litre THP), diesel heater (1.6 litre HDi).
F6	10	Diagnostic socket, directional headlamps, particle emission filter pump (Diesel), Distance alert, mirror adjustment control.
F7	10	Power steering control unit, automatic gearbox, directional headlamps height adjustment motor.
F8	20	Starter motor control.
F9	10	Clutch and brake pedal switches.
F11	40	Air conditioning fan.



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F12	**30**	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F14	**30**	Air pump.
F15	**10**	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F16	**10**	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F17	**15**	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F18	**15**	Right-hand dipped headlamp.

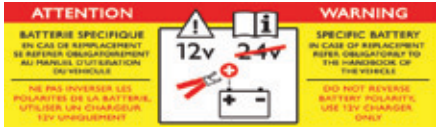
Table of fuses above the battery



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	**5**	Dual function brake switch.
F3	**5**	Battery charge unit.
F4	**25**	ABS/DSC electrovalves.
F6	**15**	Electronic / automatic gearbox.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

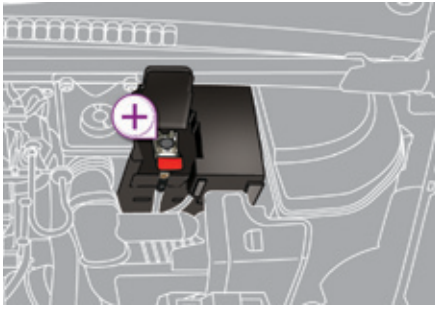


The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

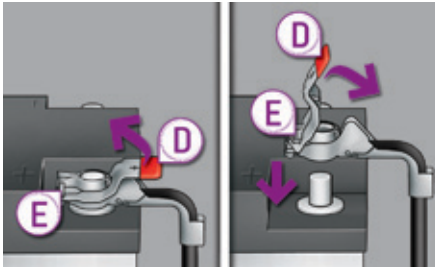
With Stop & Start, the battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.
To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover on the (+) terminal,



Disconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

Reconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- ☞ Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- ☞ Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.

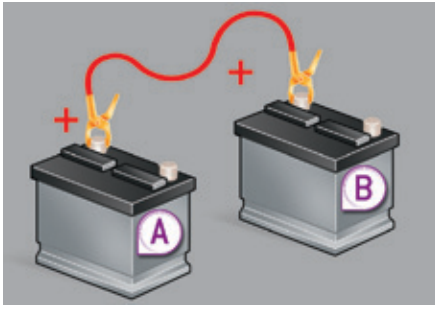
Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Starting using another battery

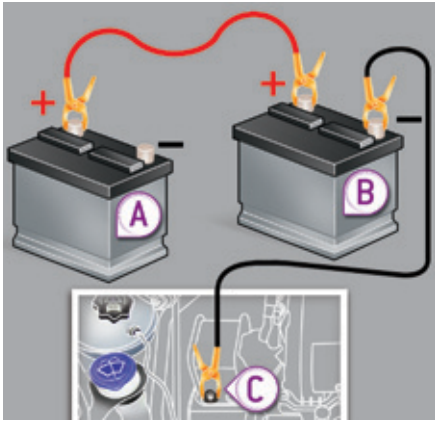
When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables.

First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Remove the plastic cover from the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).



- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- ☞ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- ☞ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Connect the battery starting with the negative terminal (-).
- ☞ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.
Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic or automatic gearbox.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.
Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems.
However, if problems remain following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- ...

Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.
This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this time has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

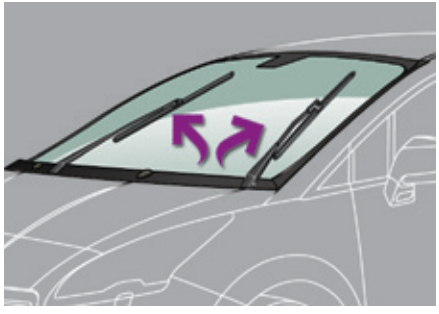
If the telephone is being used at this time, the call will be maintained for 5 minutes with the hands-free kit of your PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) or PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RNEG).

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.
A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the "Battery" paragraph).

Changing a wiper blade



Before removing a front wiper blade

- Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

- Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

- Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

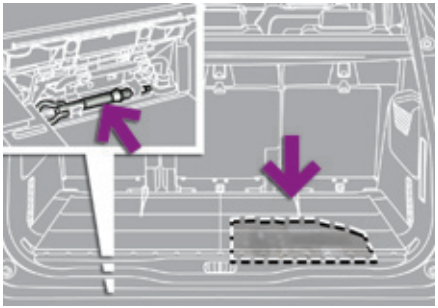
After fitting a front wiper blade

- Switch on the ignition.
- Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the removable towing eye provided in the tool kit.

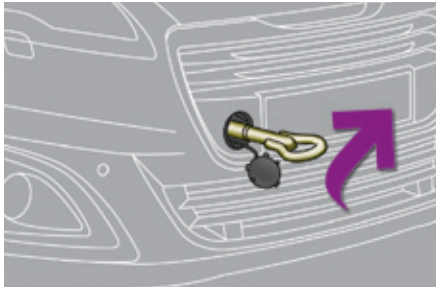
Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed under the left-hand concertina board, in the boot interior trim.
For access to it:

- open the boot,
- raise the concertina board,
- remove the towing eye from the holder.

Towing your vehicle



- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

Put the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an electronic or automatic gearbox).
Failure to follow this instruction could lead to damage to certain components (brakes, transmission, ...) and the absence of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:
- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

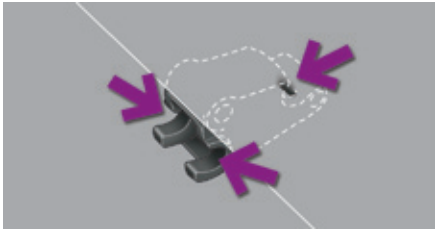
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

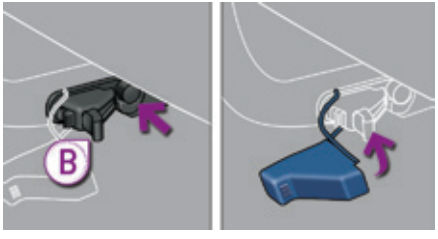
Fitting



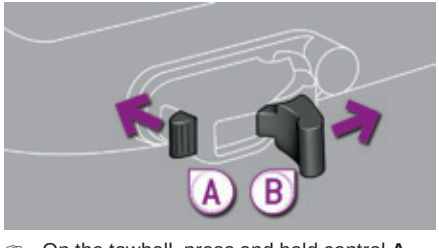
☞ Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective cover on the carrier.



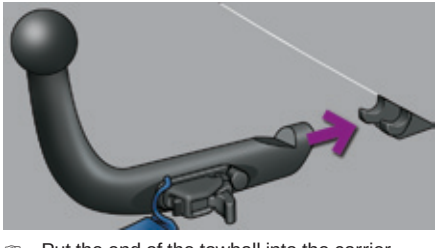
☞ Before fitting the towball, check that the points of contact, indicated by the arrows, are clean.
Use a soft clean cloth.



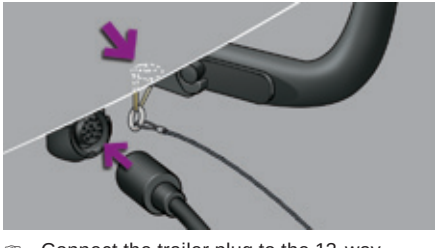
☞ Ensure that the towball is fully engaged. The two pins must be in contact with the cut-outs in the carrier and the trigger **B** must have returned to the "locked" position.
☞ Install and clip in place the protective cover, by rotating it to the left.



☞ On the towball, press and hold control **A**.
☞ Release the locking mechanism by pressing the trigger **B**.

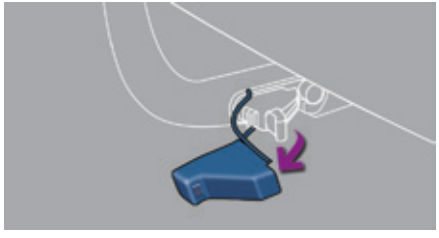


☞ Put the end of the towball into the carrier, located below the bumper, as far as it will go.

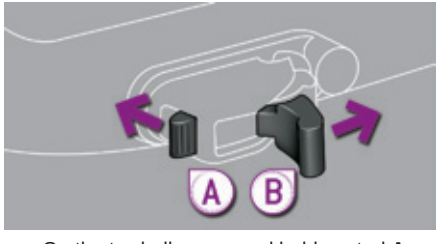


☞ Connect the trailer plug to the 13-way socket provided, located next to the carrier.
☞ Make the trailer safe by attaching its safety cable to the eye provided for this purpose, located on the carrier.

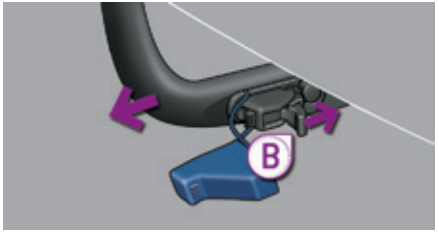
Removing



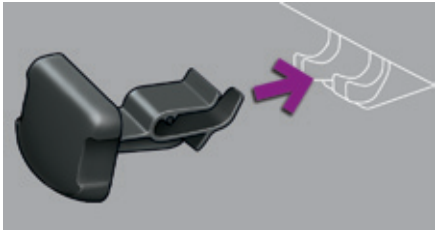
☞ Unclip and remove the protective cover, by turning it to the right.



☞ On the towball, press and hold control **A**.
☞ Release the locking mechanism by pressing the trigger **B**.



☞ Press the trigger **B** and remove the towball by pulling it towards you.



☞ Clip the protective cover in place on the carrier located below the bumper.

i When the towball is installed, it may interfere with the complete opening of the lower tailgate.
Take care to avoid the tailgate coming into contact with the towball.

! If the towball is not locked in place, the trailer could separate. There is a risk of an accident.
Always lock the towball in the way described.

Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Remove the towball when it is not being used.
Before setting off, check that the trailer lighting and signalling works correctly.
Maximum authorised nose weight: 70 kg.
Refer to the "Technical data" section for the maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle.

Carrying system (box or bicycle carrier). You must not exceed the maximum nose weight on the towbar: if this weight is exceeded, the device could detach from the vehicle and cause a serious accident.

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

! If the trailer starts to sway, you risk losing control. The trailer could overturn. There is a risk of an accident. Do not try to correct the trailer's movement by accelerating. Reduce your speed and do not counter-steer. Brake if necessary.

i We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

i Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

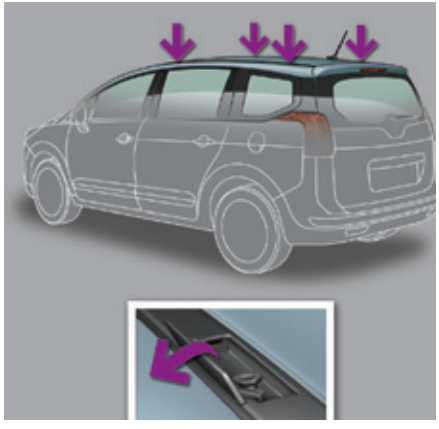
☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

Fitting roof bars



When fitting transverse roof bars, use the four quick-fit fixings provided for this purpose:

- ☞ lift the concealing flaps,
- ☞ open the fixing covers on each bar using the key,
- ☞ put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one,
- ☞ ensure that roof bars are correctly fitted (by shaking them),
- ☞ close the fixing covers on each bar using the key.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): **65** kg.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

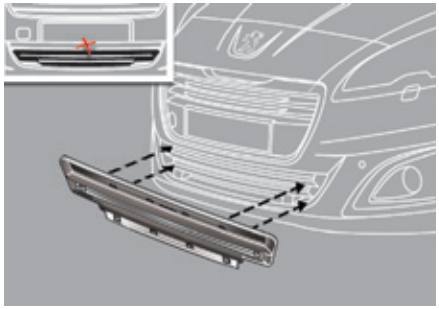


If your vehicle is fitted with roof finishers, do not use them for carrying loads.

Very cold climate screen

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.
Before fitting or removing the screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped. It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fitting



- Offer up the screen, placing the lower clips in contact with lower section of the lower grille, using the centre guide as an aid.
- Clip first the lower part, then the upper part, from the middle out towards the edges.

Removal



- Unclip the upper part of the screen, starting at the edges.
- Take the screen by the lower edges and detach it by pulling it towards you.

Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10° C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the PEUGEOT dealer network.
These accessories and parts are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

"Comfort"

Door deflectors, parking sensors, side window blinds, coat-hanger, insulated module...

"Style"

Alloy wheels, door sill trims, chrome-plated door handle shells, spoiler, gear lever knob...

"Protection"

Mats*, boot liner, luggage net, style mud flaps**, seat covers, pet range, boot sill protector...

"Transport solutions"

Roof bars, towbars, bicycle carrier on towbar, bicycle carrier on roof bars, ski carrier, rigid and flexible roof boxes...
Trailer towbar, which must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

"Safety and security"

Anti-theft alarm, window etching, wheel security bolts, child seats and booster cushions, first aid kit, breathalyzer, warning triangle, high visibility vest, stolen vehicle tracking system, dog guard, winter equipment (snow chains, non-slip covers...)...

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

** The configuration of the vehicle requires that it be fitted with mud flaps at the rear.

"Multimedia"

Portable satellite navigation systems, mapping updates, Bluetooth hands-free system, DVD player, USB Box, additional Bluetooth wireless headphones, Bluetooth audio headphones mains charger, multimedia support...

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

You can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (exterior and interior), products for topping up (screenwash fluid...) and refills (sealant cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...) from PEUGEOT dealers.

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Engine	**1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S**	**1.6 litre THP 163**	**1.6 litre THP 165 S&S**
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)	**Automatic** (6-speed)	**Automatic** (6-speed)
Model code	HNYM/S HNYM/1S	5FMA/1 5FMA/1D	5GZT/S 5GZT/1S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199	1 598	1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	70 x 90.5	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	96	120	121
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 500	6 000	6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230	240	240
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 400	1 400
Fuel	Unleaded petrol	Unleaded petrol	Unleaded petrol
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.5	4.25	4.25

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	**1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S**				**1.6 litre THP 163**		**1.6 litre THP 165 S&S**	
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)				**Automatic** (6-speed)		**EAT6 automatic** (6-speed)	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7	5	7
Model code (5-seat: 0A, 7-seat: 0E)	HNYM/S	HNYM/S	HNYM/1S HNYM/2S	HNYM/1S HNYM/2S	5FMA/1	5FMA/1	5GZT/S 5GZT/1S	5GZT/S 5GZT/1S
- Unladen weight	1 430	1 430	1 420	1 420	1 510	1 540	1 500	1 500
- Kerb weight*	1 505	1 505	1 495	1 495	1 585	1 615	1 575	1 575
- Payload	610	770	620	780	565	710	560	725
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 040	2 200	2 040	2 200	2 075	2 250	2 060	2 225
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 140	3 300	3 140	3 300	2 875	3 050	3 510	3 525
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	1 100	1 100	1 100	800	800	1 450	1 300
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 400	1 400	1 400	1 400	-	-	1 650	1 600
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	745	745	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg) - LCV (light commercial vehicle)

Engine	**1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S**		**1.6 litre THP 165 S&S**
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)		**EAT6 automatic** (6 speed)
Seats	5	5	5
Model code (5-seat: 0A)	HNYM/SCU	HNYM/1SCU HNYM/2SCU	5GZT/SCU 5GZT/1SCU
- Unladen weight	1 535	1 536	1 591
- Kerb weight*	1 610	1 611	1 666
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)**	2 190	2 190	2 225
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient***	3 290	3 290	3 500
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient****	1 100	1 100	1 275
- Braked trailer (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	-	-	-
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** Exceeding the maximum rear axle weight involves limiting the speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive
*** Exceeding the gross vehicle weight when towing involves limiting the speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.
**** Maximum braked trailer weight within the GTW limit: warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Engine	**1.6 litre e-HDi 115**	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S**		**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S**	
Gearbox	**ETG6 electronic** (6-speed)	**Manual** (6-speed)	**EAT6 automatic** (6-speed)	**Manual** (6-speed)	**EAT6 automatic** (6-speed)
Model code	9HD8/PS	BHXM/S BHXM/1S	BHXT/1S BHXT/2S	BHZM/S BHZM/1S	BHZT/1S BHZT/2S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1560	1 560		1 560	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	84	84		88	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 600	3 500		3 500	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	270	300		300	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750		1 750	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel	
Catalytic converter	yes	yes		yes	
Particle filter	yes	yes		yes	
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.75	-		-	

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

Diesel engines and gearboxes (continued)

Engine	**2.0 litre BlueHDi 136 S&S**	**2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S**
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)	**Manual** (6-speed)
Model code	AHSM/S AHSM/1S	AHRM/S AHRM/1S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88	85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	100	110
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	370	370
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes	yes
Particle filter	yes	yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	-	-

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S**					
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)				**EAT6 automatic** (6-speed)	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7
Model code (5-seat: 0A, 7-seat: 0E)	BHXM/S BHXM/1S	BHXM/S BHXM/1S	BHXM/2S	BHXM/2S	BHXT/S BHXT/1S BHXT/2S	BHXT/S BHXT/1S BHXT/2S
- Unladen weight	1 490	1 490	1 490	1 490	1 510	1 521
- Kerb weight*	1 565	1 565	1 565	1 565	1 585	1 585
- Payload	590	760	590	760	590	755
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 080	2 250	2 080	2 250	2 100	2 265
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 180	3 150	2 980	2 950	3 100	3 115
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	900	900	700	1 000	850
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 300	1 100	1 100	900	1 200	1 050
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	70	70	70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg) (continued)

Engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S**					
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)				**EAT6 automatic** (6-speed)	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7
Model code (5-seat: 0A, 7-seat: 0E)	BHZM/S BHZM/1S	BHZM/S BHZM/1S	BHZM/2S	BHZM/2S	BHZT/S BHZT/1S BHZT/2S	BHZT/S BHZT/1S BHZT/2S
- Unladen weight	1 490	1 490	1 490	1 490	1 510	1 510
- Kerb weight*	1 565	1 565	1 565	1 565	1 585	1 585
- Payload	590	760	590	760	590	755
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 080	2 250	2 080	2 250	2 100	2 265
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 180	3 150	2 980	2 950	3 100	3 115
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	900	900	700	1 000	850
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 300	1 100	1 100	900	1 200	1 050
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	70	70	70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg) (continued)

Engine	**1.6 litre e-HDi 115**		**2.0 litre BlueHDi 136**		**2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S**	
Gearbox	**ETG6 electronic** (6-speed)		**Manual** (6-speed)		**Manual** (6-speed)	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7
Model code (5-seat: 0A, 7-seat: 0E)	9HD8/PS 9HD8/1PS	9HD8/2PS	AHSM/S AHSM/1S AHSM/2S	AHSM/S AHSM/1S AHSM/2S	AHRM/S AHRM/1S AHRM/2S	AHRM/S AHRM/1S AHRM/2S
- Unladen weight	1 430	1 430	1 530	1 530	1 530	1 530
- Kerb weight*	1 505	1 505	1 605	1 605	1 605	1 605
- Payload	640	640	610	780	610	780
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 070	2 070	2 140	2 310	2 140	2 310
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 170	2 920	3 490	3 510	3 490	3 510
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	850	1 350	1 200	1 350	1 200
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 300	1 050	1 550	1 500	1 550	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	70	70	70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

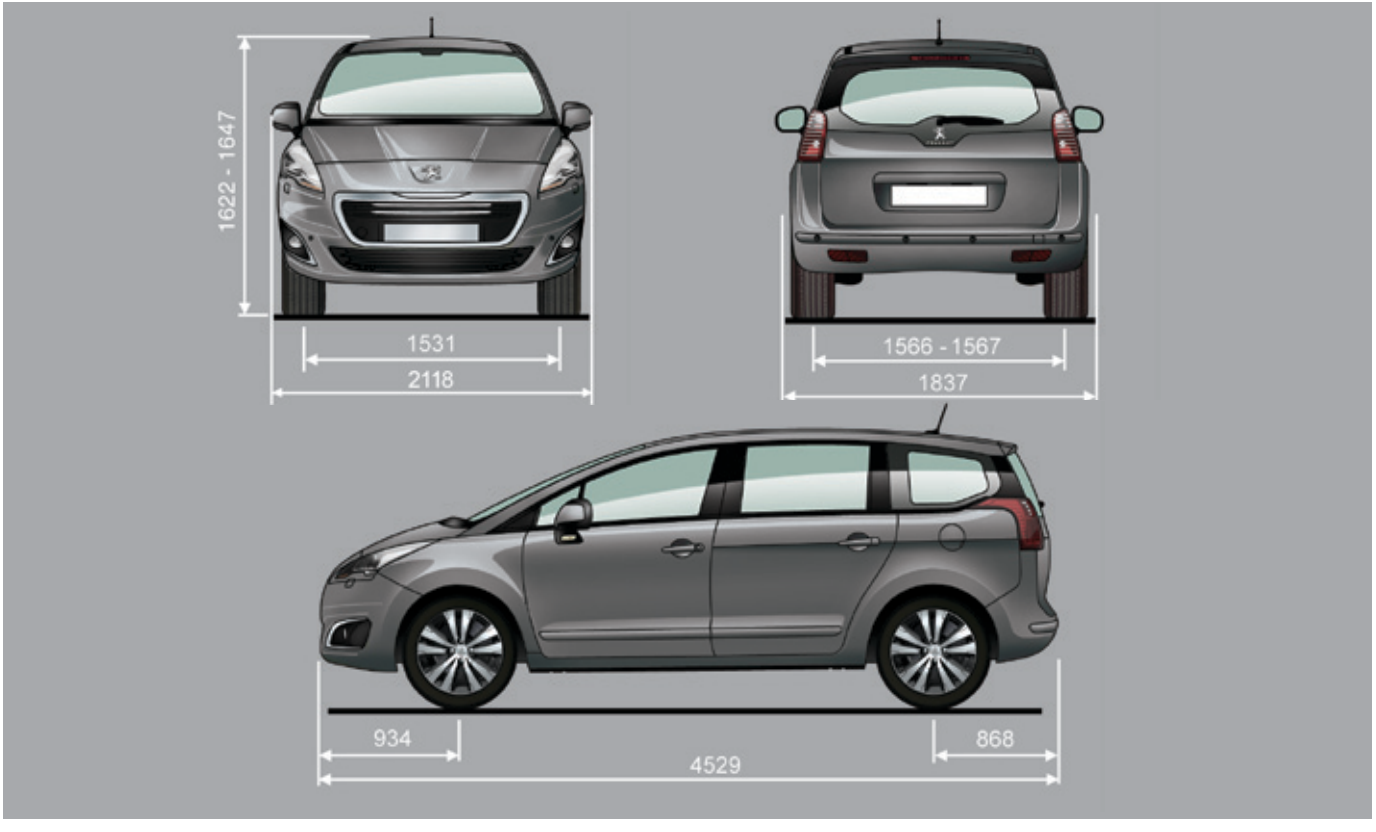
Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg) - LCV (light commercial vehicle)

Engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S**			**2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S**
Gearbox	**Manual** (6-speed)		**EAT6 automatic** (6-speed)	**Manual** (6-speed)
Seats	5	5	5	5
Model code (5-set: 0A)	BHZM/SCU BHZM/1SCU	BHZM/2SCU	BHZT/SCU BHZT/1SCU BHZT/2SCU	AHRM/SCU AHRM/1SCU AHRM/2SCU
- Unladen weight	1 590	1 590	1 605	1 649
- Kerb weight*	1 665	1 665	1 680	1 724
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)**	2 210	2 210	2 230	2 300
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient***	3 110	2 910	3 130	3 450
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient****	900	700	900	1 150
- Braked trailer (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	-	-	-	-
- Unbraked trailer	750	700	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** Exceeding the maximum rear axle weight involves limiting the speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.
*** Exceeding the gross vehicle weight when the vehicle is towing involves limiting the speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.
**** Maximum braked trailer weight within the GTW limit; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Dimensions (in mm)



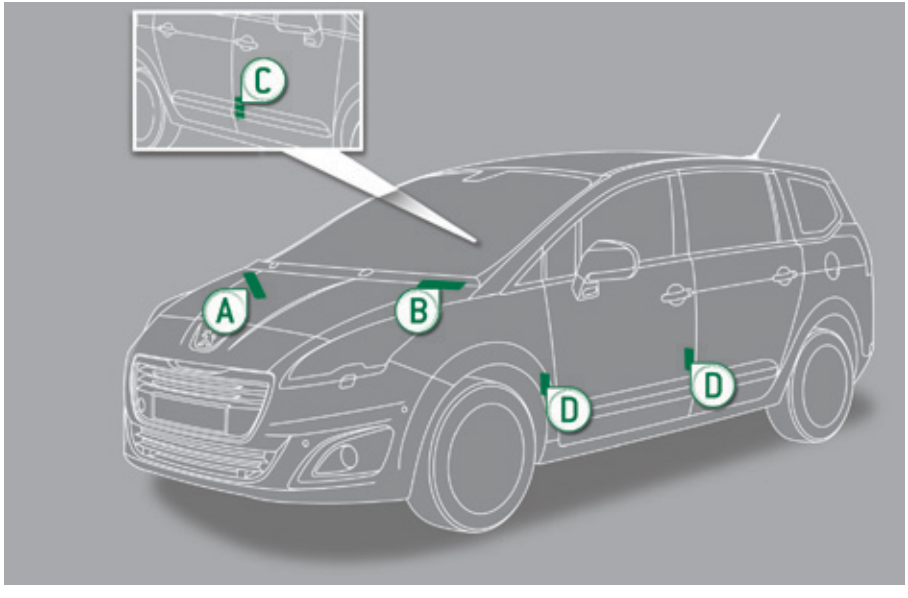
Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.

A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.
This number is given on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The VIN is marked on a self-destroying label affixed to the door aperture, on the driver's side.



D. Tyre/paint label.
This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

11

Emergency or assistance call





PEUGEOT Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.
Pressing this button for more than 8 seconds cancels the request at any time.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyPEUGEOT personal space, via the PEUGEOT Internet website in your country, accessible on www.peugeot.co.uk.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.
In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



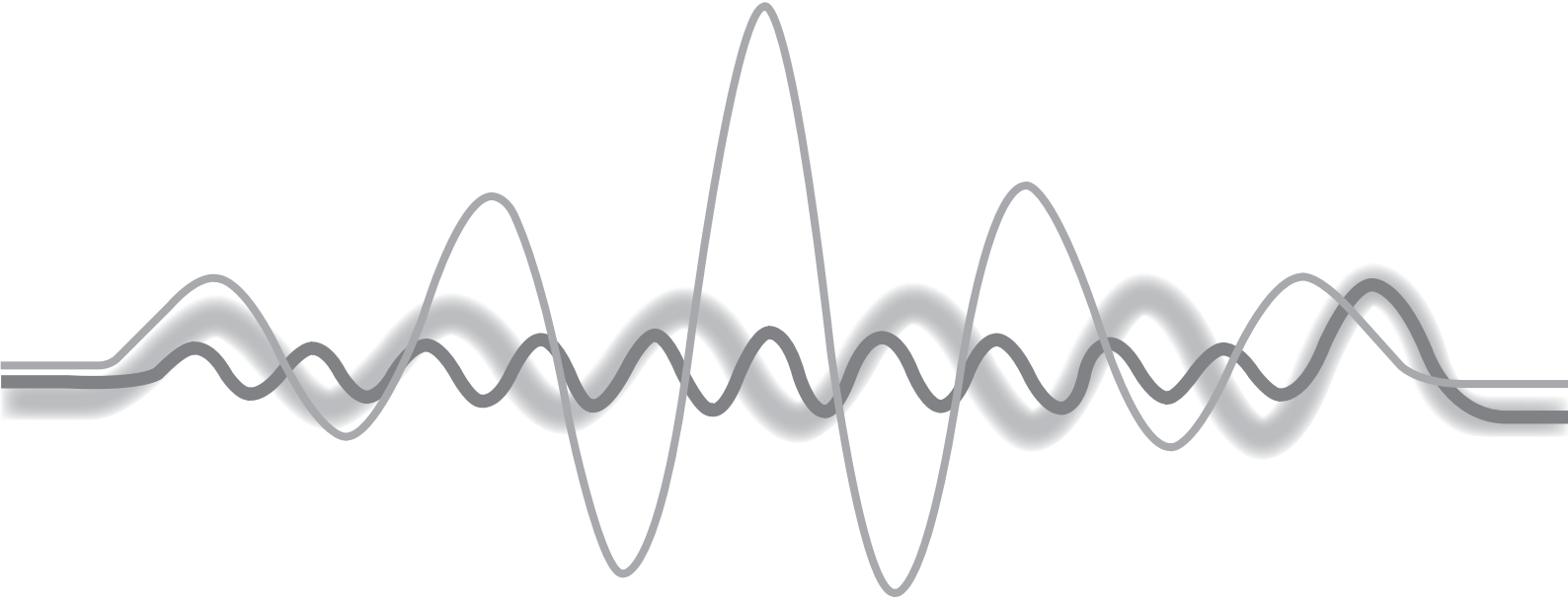
Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.





PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)

GPS navigation system
Multimedia audio system
Bluetooth® telephone

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps - Control panel	p.	274
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	276
03	General operation	p.	277
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	279
05	Traffic information	p.	292
06	Using the telephone	p.	295
07	Radio	p.	305
08	Music media players	p.	310
09	Audio settings	p.	316
10	Configuration	p.	317
11	Screen menu maps	p.	318
	Frequently asked questions	p.	322

01 FIRST STEPS

Selection and OK confirmation knob:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

Open the "**Configuration**" menu.

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the navigation demonstration mode.

Select:

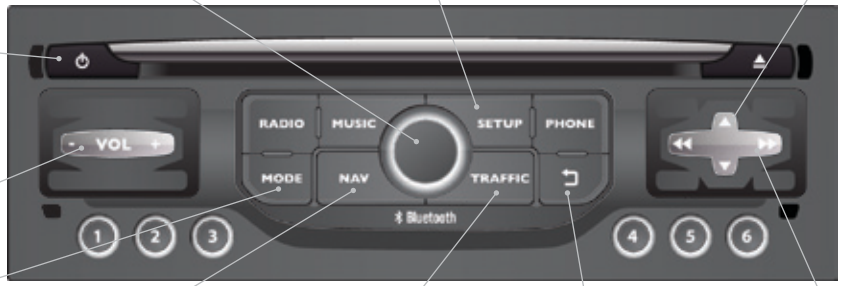
- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/ next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in "**Move the map**" mode.

Short press without the engine running: on / off.

Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).



MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu and display the recent destinations.

Open the "**Traffic information**" menu and display the current traffic alerts.

Abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.

Long press: return to the permanent display.

Select:

- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in "**Move the map**" mode.

01 FIRST STEPS

Access to the "**RADIO**" menu and display the list of stations received.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the radio tuner source.

Access to the "**MUSIC**" menu, and display of the CD/MP3/ Apple® tracks and folders.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the "**MEDIA**" (CD/USB/iPod/Streaming/AUX) sources.

Open the "**Telephone**" menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.



Press and hold: reinitialise the system.

Short press: select pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

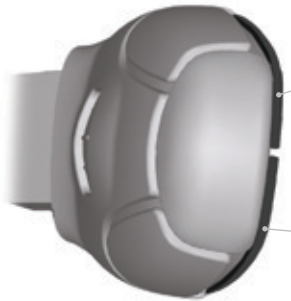
RADIO: change to the next radio station in the list.
Long press: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD: select the next track.
CD: press and hold: fast forward play.

SRC/TEL button:
change the audio source,
start a call from the address book,
call/end call on the telephone,
press for more than 2 seconds: open the address book.



RADIO: change to the previous radio station in the list.
Long press: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD: select the previous track.
CD: press and hold: fast reverse.

RADIO: select the previous/next preset station.
Select the next entry in the address book.



Volume increase.

Volume decrease.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

MODE

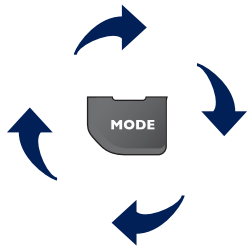
Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

" **RADIO** "



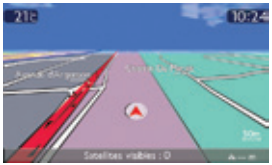
"**TELEPHONE**"
(If conversation in progress)







"**MAP IN WINDOW**"
(If navigation guidance in progress)



"**FULL SCREEN MAP**"

SETUP

SETUP: PARAMETERS
date and time, display configuration, sound, vehicle settings.

RADIO

MUSIC

Change the audio source:
RADIO: RADIO broadcasts.
MUSIC: play MUSIC.

For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.

For the details of the menus, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

Display according to context



A press on the knob gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

- 1 **Change waveband**
  - 2 **FM**
  - 2 **DAB**
  - 2 **AM**
- 1 **Service announcements**
  - 2 **Traffic anouncements (TA)**
  - 2 **Information**
  - 2 **Divertissement**
  - 2 **Special or Urgent**

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

- 1 **Private mode**
- 1 **Put call on hold**
- 1 **DTMF ring tones**
- 1 **Hang up**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

- 1 **Normal**
- 1 **Random**
- 1 **Random on all media**
- 1 **Repetition**

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

- 1 **Stop / Restore guidance**
- 1 **Select destination**
  - 2 **Enter an address**
  - 2 **Directory**
  - 2 **GPS coordinates**
- 1 **Divert route**
- 1 **Move the map**
  - 2 **Info. on location**
  - 2 **Select as destination**
  - 2 **Select as stage**
  - 2 **Save this place (contacts)**
  - 2 **Quit map mode**
- 1 **Guidance criteria**

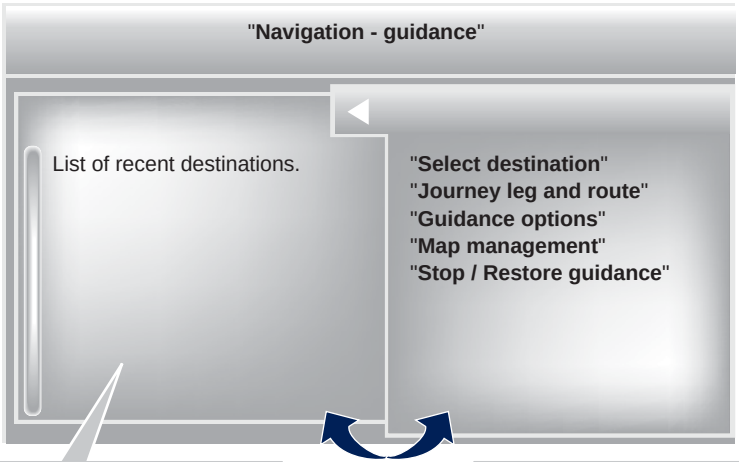
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "NAVIGATION" menu



Press **NAV**.

A short press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.

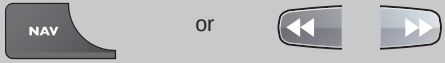


To make full use of all of the functions of your navigation system, update the mapping regularly. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or order your mapping update at http://peugeot.navigation.com

To delete the list of recent destinations, select "**Guidance options**" in the navigation menu then select "**Delete last destinations**" and confirm. Select "**Yes**" then confirm.

Deleting just one destination is not possible.

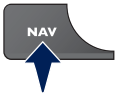
Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



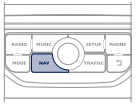
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Selecting a destination

Towards a new destination

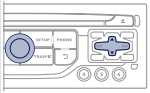
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



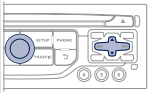
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Enter an address**" and confirm.



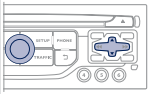
3 

Select the "**Country**" function then confirm.



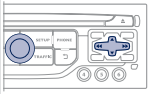
4 

Select the "**Town**" or "**Post code**" function then confirm.



5 

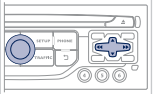
Select the letters in the name of the town or the characters in a post code one at a time, confirming each one with the knob.



6 

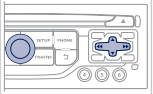
Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm.

A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming "**List**" in the screen.



7 

If possible, enter the "**Road**" and "**N°/X**" information in the same way.

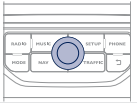


Select "**Archive**" to save the address entered in a contact file.

After about 60 seconds with no address entered, the system returns to the last home page; to return to the current input, start again with steps 1 and 2 then press again.

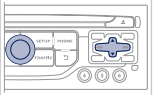
8 

Confirm "**OK**" to start guidance.



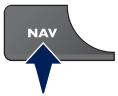
9 

Select the guidance criteria: "**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**" or optimised "**Distance/Time**", then select the desired restriction criteria: "**With tolls**", "**With Ferry**", or "**Traffic info**" then confirm "**OK**".

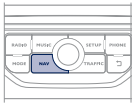


04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards a recent destination

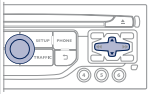
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

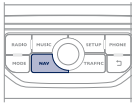
Select the desired destination and confirm to start navigation.



Delete recent destinations

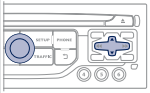
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



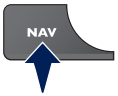
2 

Select "**Options**" and confirm and then "**Delete recent destinations**" and confirm.

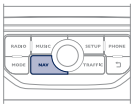


Towards a contact in the directory of contacts

Navigation towards a contact is only possible if there is an address entered in the audio navigation system.

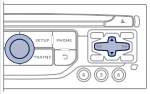
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



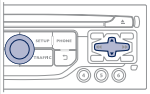
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Directory**" and confirm.



3 

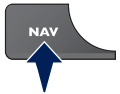
Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm "**OK**" to start navigation.



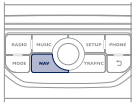
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards GPS coordinates

1



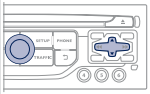
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



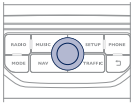
Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3



Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start navigation.

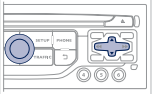


Towards a point on the map

1



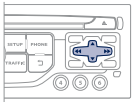
With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



2



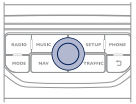
Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



3



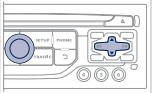
Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4



Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

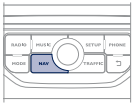
Towards points of interest (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



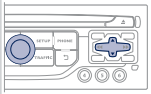
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



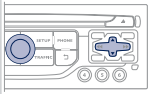
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (refer to the "Towards a new destination" section), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.



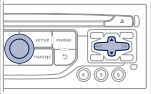


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



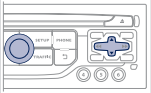
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start navigation.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



List of principal points of interest (POI)

- Service station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Cafeteria
- Bed and breakfast

- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Vending machine
- Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground
- Swimming pool
- Winter sports resort

- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital, Chemist, Vet
- Police station
- School
- Town hall
- Post office
- Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument
- Tourist information, Tourist attraction
- Risk areas / Danger areas*

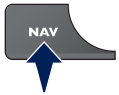
An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on:
http://peugeot.navigation.com.

* According to availability in the country.

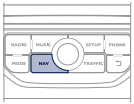
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Settings for risk area / danger area alerts

1



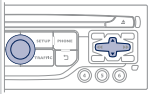
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance** menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3

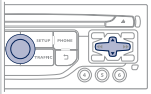


Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that Risk area warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.



!

These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

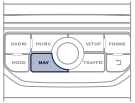
The detailed procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at http://peugeot.navigation.com.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Adding a stage

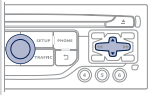
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

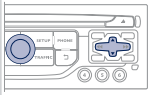
Select "**Journey leg and route**" then confirm.



3 

Select "**Add a stage**" then confirm.

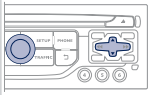
The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by "**Enter an address**", a contact in "**Directory**", or "**Previous destinations**".



4 

Select "**Close to**" a route passing close to the stage or "**Strict**" for a route passing through the stage.

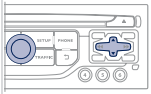
Confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route.



Organising stages

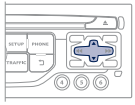
1 

To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select "**Order/delete journey legs**" and confirm.



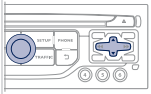
2 

Select the stage that you want to move in the order.



3 

Select and confirm to save the modifications.



Select "**Delete**" to delete the stage.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

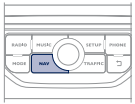
Route options

Calculation criteria

1



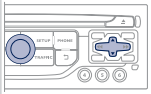
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



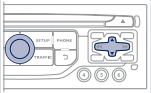
3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").

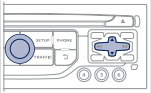


If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

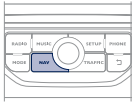
Map management

Selecting the points of interest displayed on the map

1



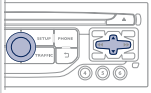
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



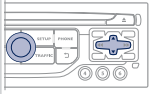
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



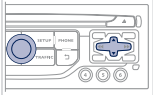
Select "**Map details**" and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.

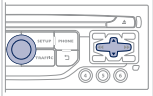


Select "**Default**" to have only "**Filling stations, garages**" and "**Risk areas**" appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



Select "**OK**" then confirm and select "**OK**" again then confirm to save the modifications.



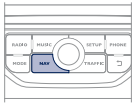
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Map orientation

1



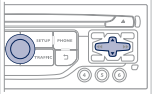
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



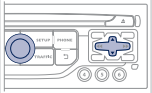
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map orientation**" and confirm.

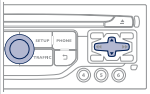


4



Select:

- "**Vehicle direction**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**North direction**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the "**SETUP**" menu.

Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Navigation voice synthesis

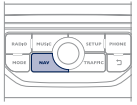
Adjusting the volume / Deactivation

The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the "**SETUP**" / "**Voice synthesis**" menu.

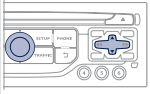
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



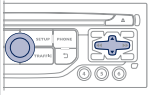
2 

Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



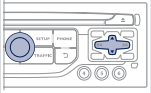
3 

Select "**Set speech synthesis**" and confirm.



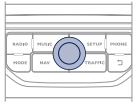
4 

Select the volume graph and confirm.



5 

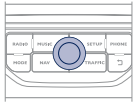
Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.



Select "**Deactivate**" to deactivate voice messages.

6 

Select "**OK**" and press the dial to confirm.

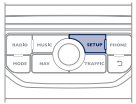


Male voice / Female voice

1



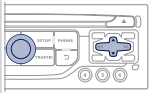
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



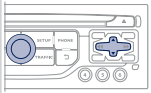
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice. The system restarts.

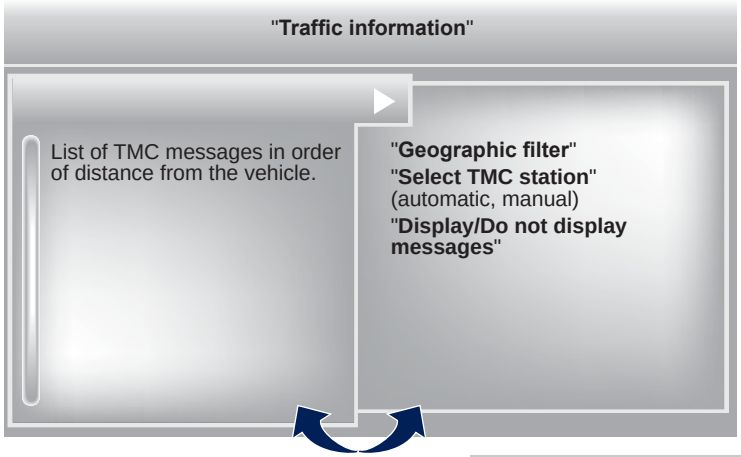


05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" menu



Press "**TRAFFIC**".



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

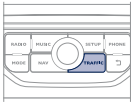
Configure the filtering and display of TMC messages

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages with GPS Navigation provide traffic information in real time.

1

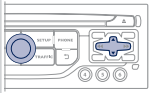


Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the "**Traffic information**" menu.



2

Select the "**Geographic filter**" function and confirm.



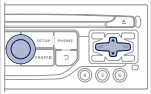
3

The system offers a choice of:

- "**Retain all the messages**",

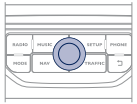
or

- "**Retain the messages**"
  - "**Around the vehicle**", (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
  - "**On the route**".



4

Confirm "**OK**" to save the modifications.



i

We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Principal TMC symbols

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

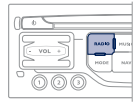
- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

Receiving TA messages

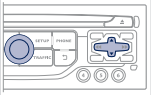
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

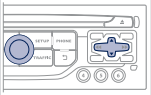
Press **RADIO** to display the menu.



2 
Select "**Service announcements**" then confirm.



3 
Activate or deactivate "**TA**" then confirm.



The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.



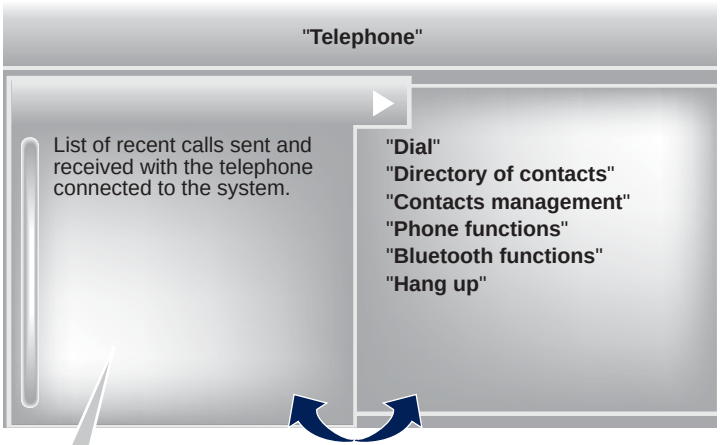
Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button.
During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press this button.



In the top bar of the permanent display


No telephone connected.


Telephone connected.


Incoming call.


Outgoing call.


Synchronisation of contacts in progress.


Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm **"OK"** to start the call.


Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone
First connection

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.peugeot.co.uk (services).

Quick procedure from the telephone

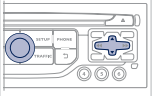
1 In the Bluetooth menu of your telephone, select the name "PEUGEOT" from the list of devices detected.



2 Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



3 Enter the same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.



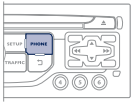
Procedure from the system

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

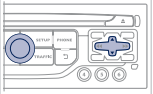


2 

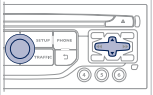
Press this button.



3 
Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.



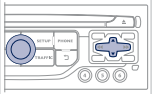
4 
Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.
The list of peripheral devices detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



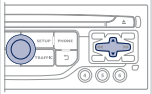
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

5 Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then confirm.



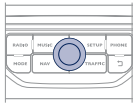
6 Select "**Connect**" and confirm.



7 The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Hands-free mode**" (telephone only),
- in "**Audio**" mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or "**All**" (for selection of both modes).

Select "**OK**" and confirm.



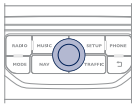
The "**Hands-free mode**" should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.

The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

8 Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



9 Enter the same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.

Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

On return to the vehicle, the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible).

To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

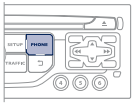
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Directory configuration / Synchronisation with the telephone

1



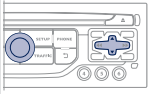
Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



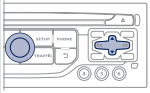
Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



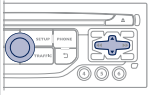
Select "**Sort by Name/First name**" or "**Sort by First name/Name**" to choose the order in which they appear.



2c



Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.

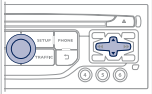


2d



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.

Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

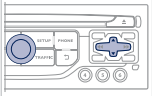


2e



Select "**Synchronization options**":

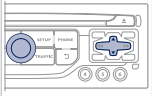
- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2f



Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.

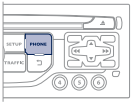


06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Editing, importing or deleting a contact

1 

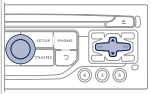
Press **PHONE** then select "**Directory of contacts**" and confirm.



2 

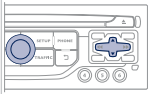
Select "**Search**", then turn the knob to choose in numerical or alphabetical order a group of contacts from the entries made previously, then confirm.

Go to the list of contacts, select the desired contact then confirm.



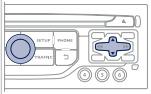
3a 

Select "**Open**" to view a contact on the telephone or modify a contact saved in the system.



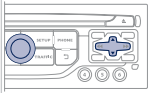
3b 

Select "**Import**" to copy a contact from the telephone to the system.



3c 

Select "**Delete**" to delete a contact recorded in the system.



It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.

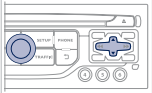
Once the contact has been imported, the Bluetooth symbol disappears, replaced by the telephone symbol which shows that the contact has been saved in the system.

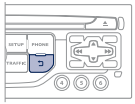
In the "**Directory of contacts**" menu, the import and deletion of contacts is done one by one.

4 



Select **OK** or press the back button to exit this menu.





06 USING THE TELEPHONE

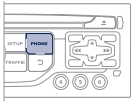
Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

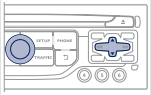
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



2 

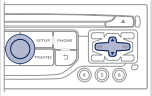
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3 

Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.

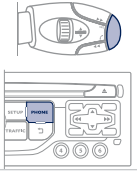
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.



Calling a contact

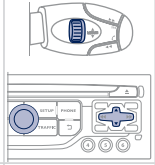
1 

Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.



2 

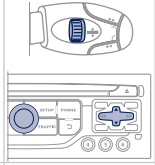
Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.



3 

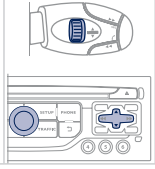
Select the desired contact and confirm.

If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4 

Select the number and confirm to start the call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Calling a recently entered number

1



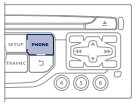
Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,



or



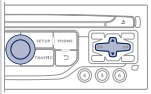
Press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

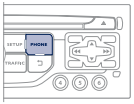
It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

Ending a call

1a



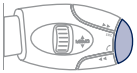
Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.



1b



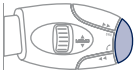
Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1c



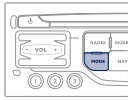
Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1d

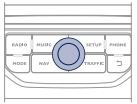


Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.





Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

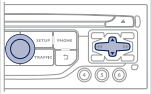
Receiving a call

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2

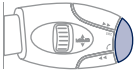


"**Yes**" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press "**OK**" to accept the call.
Select "**No**" and confirm to reject the call.





A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.
A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



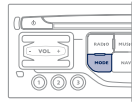
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Options during a call*

1

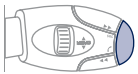


During a call, press the **MODE** button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "**OK**" to open the contextual menu.





Or make a short press on this button.

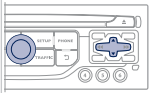


2a



Select "**Private mode**" and confirm to take the call on the handset.

Or select "**Hands-free mode**" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.

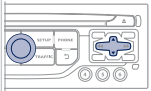


2b



Select "**Put call on hold**" and confirm to put the current call on hold.

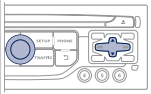
Or select "**Resume the call**" and confirm to resume the call on hold.



2c



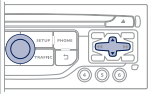
Select "**DTMF ring tones**" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.



2d

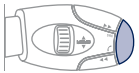


Select "**Hang up**" to end the call.





it is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "**Conference mode call**" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.



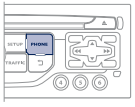
* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Managing paired telephones

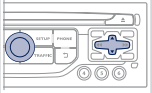
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



2 

Select "**Bluetooth functions**".



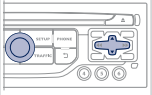
3 

Select "**List of the paired peripherals**" and confirm.

It is possible to:

- "**Connect**" or "**Disconnect**" the selected telephone,
- delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

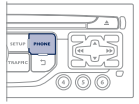
It is also possible to select all pairings.



Changing the ringtone

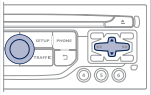
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



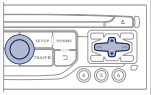
2 

Select "**Phone functions**" and confirm.



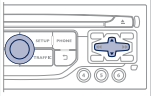
3 

Select "**Ring options**" and confirm.



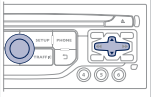
4 

You can adjust the volume and the type of ringtone.



5 

Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu



Press **RADIO**.

"FM / DAB / AM"

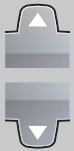
Alphabetical list of stations received.

"**Change waveband**" ("**FM / DAB / AM**")

"**Options**" ("**TA, RDS, DAB/FM station tracking**")

"**Audio settings**" (see this section)

"**Update radio list**"





Press ▲ or ▼ or use the rotary control to select the previous or next station in the list.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



07 RADIO

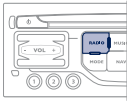
Changing waveband

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.

1



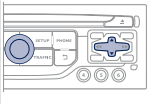
Press **RADIO** or **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2



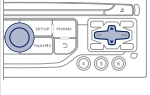
Select "**Change waveband**".



3



Select "**FM / DAB / AM**" and confirm.



Selecting a station



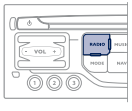
The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



1b

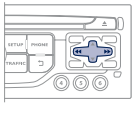


By automatic frequency search

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.





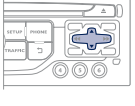


1c



By manual frequency search

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the radio frequency step by step.



07 RADIO

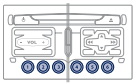
Presetting a station

1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.





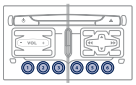
2

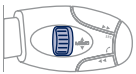


Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.







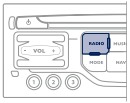
Activate / Deactivate RDS

! RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



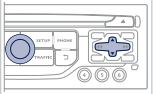
Press **RADIO**.



2



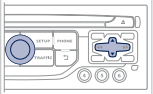
Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3



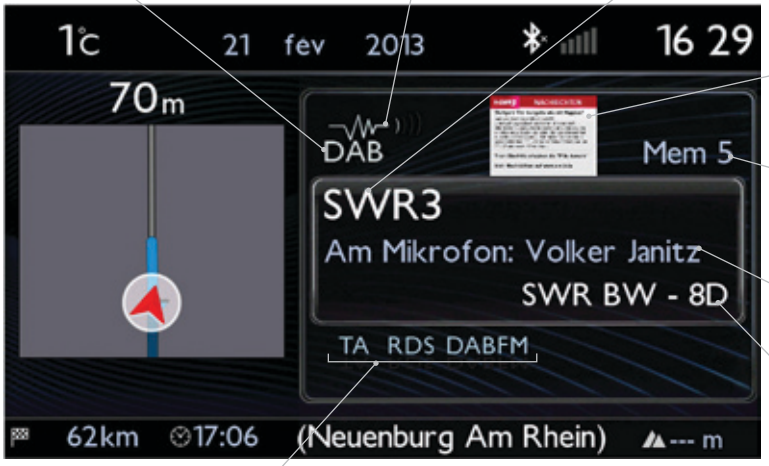
Activate or deactivate "**RDS**" then confirm.



Display of the "DAB" or "DAB (FM)" band.

Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

Display of the name of the current station.



Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

The "Video mode" allows the display to be enlarged.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.

Short press: select the preset radio station.

Long press: preset a radio station.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Display of the name and number of the multiplex service being used.

Display of options:

if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,

if active and available, the display will be empty.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

07 RADIO

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) Digital radio

Digital radio provides a higher quality reception and also the graphical display of information for the radio station, by selecting "Video mode" in "Radio favourites" (Options).

The different radio multiplex services offer a choice of stations displayed in alphabetical order.

1 

Press "**RADIO**".

2 
Select "**Change band**" and confirm.

3 
Selection "**DAB**" and confirm.


Change of station in the same "multiplex".


Manual search for a "multiplex".

Digital radio - DAB/FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if one exists).

1 

Press "**RADIO**".

2 
Select "**Options**" and confirm.

3 
Select "**FM/DAB**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio with sometimes a variation in volume.

Display of the "DAB" band then becomes "DAB (FM)".

When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

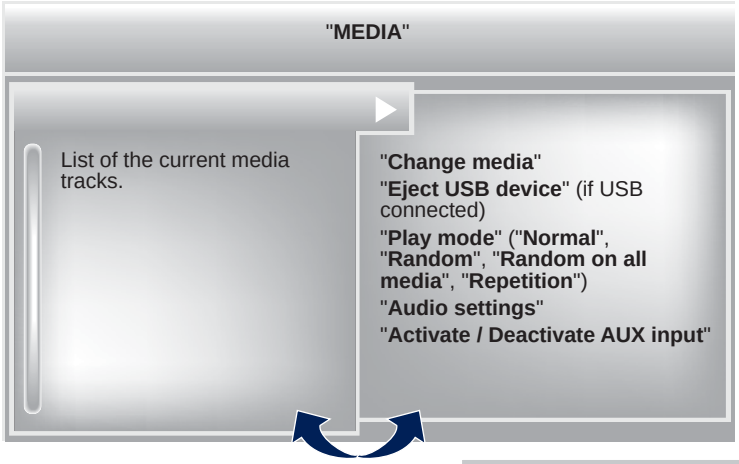
If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "Music media player" menu



Press **MUSIC**.



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB player

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are greater than 32 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format (udf, ...), it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied).

If a partitioned USB memory key is connected to the system, only the first partition is recognised.

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

The number of tracks is limited to 2000 maximum, 999 tracks per folder.

If the current consumption at the USB port exceeds 500 mA, the system goes into protection mode and deactivates the port.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).





Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

The system does not support the operation of an Apple® player and a USB memory stick connected at the same time.

It is recommended that official Apple® USB cables are used to ensure correct operation.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Sources

Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

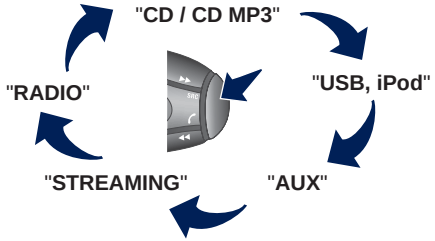


The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

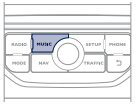
Selection of source

The **SOURCE** button on the steering mounted controls allows a direct change to the next media source.



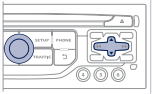
1 

Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MEDIA**" menu.



2 

Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.



Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible either with **SOURCE** or **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Selecting a track

Previous track.	
Next track.	
Previous folder.	
Next folder.	
Fast forward.	Long press 
Fast backward.	Long press 
Pause: long press on **SRC**.	

MUSIC: List of USB or CD tracks or folders	
Up or down in the list.	
Confirm, next menu level.	
Up one menu level.	 

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Connecting APPLE® players

1 Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

2 Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.
The "Shuffle tracks" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random" mode on the audio system.
The "Shuffle albums" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random all" on the audio system.
"Shuffle tracks" is restored by default on each connection.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1 Connect the telephone: refer to the "**USING THE TELEPHONE**" section.
Select "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

2 If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

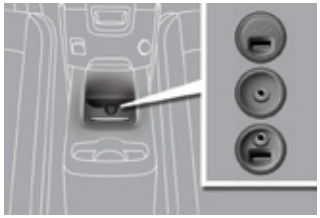
Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)
JACK/USB audio cable not supplied

1

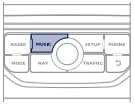
Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player…) to the JACK auxiliary audio socket or USB port using a suitable cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MUSIC**" menu.

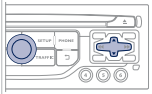


3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

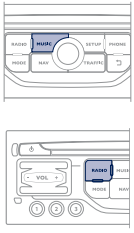
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

09 AUDIO SETTINGS

1



They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.



2

- "**Equalizer**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**")
- "**Le-Ri balance**" (Left/Right)
- "**Fr-Re balance**" (Front/Rear)
- "**Auto. Volume**" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.

The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

i

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

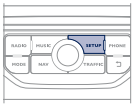
10 CONFIGURATION

Display configuration

1



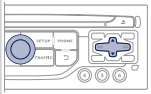
Press **SETUP** to display the "**Configuration**" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

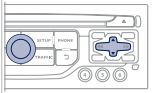


3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



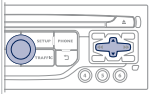
3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness.

Press "**OK**" to save the changes.

The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**

"Navigation - guidance" MENU

- 1 **Select destination**
  - 2 **Enter an address**
  - 2 **Directory**
  - 2 **GPS coordinates**
- 1 **Journey leg and route**
  - 2 **Add a stage**
    - 3 Enter an address
    - 3 Directory
    - 3 Previous destinations
  - 2 **Order/delete journey legs**
  - 2 **Divert route**
  - 2 **Chosen destination**
- 1 **Guidance options**
  - 2 **Define calculation criteria**
    - 3 Fastest route
    - 3 Shortest route
    - 3 Distance/Time
    - 3 With tolls
    - 3 With Ferry
    - 3 Traffic info
  - 2 **Set speech synthesis**
  - 2 **Delete last destinations**
  - 2 **Set parameters for risk areas**
- 1 **Map management**
  - 2 **Map orientation**
    - 3 Vehicle direction
    - 3 North direction
    - 3 Perspective view
  - 2 **Map details**
  - 2 **Move the map**
  - 2 **Mapping and updating**
  - 2 **Description of risk areas database**
- 1 **Stop / Restore guidance**
  - 2 **Fastest route**
  - 2 **Shortest route**
  - 2 **Distance/Time**
  - 2 **With tolls**
  - 2 **With Ferry**
  - 2 **Traffic info**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"TRAFFIC INFORMATION" MENU

- 1 **Geographic filter**
  - 2 **Retain all the messages**
  - 2 **Retain the messages**
    - 3 Around the vehicle
    - 3 On the route
- 1 **Select TMC station**
  - 2 **Automatic TMC**
  - 2 **Manual TMC**
  - 2 **List of TMC stations**
- 1 **Display / Do not display messages**

"TELEPHONE" MENU

- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **Directory of contacts**
  - 2 **Call**
  - 2 **Open**
  - 2 **Import**
  - 2 **Search**
  - 2 **Delete**
  - 2 **Cancel**
- 1 **Contacts management**
  - 2 **New contact**
  - 2 **Sort by First name/Name**
  - 2 **Delete all contacts**
  - 2 **Import all the entries**
  - 2 **Synchronization options**
    - 3 No synchronization
    - 3 Display telephone contacts
    - 3 Display SIM card contacts
    - 3 Display all phone contacts
  - 2 **Contact mem. status**
- 1 **Phone functions**
  - 2 **Ring options**
  - 2 **Delete calls log**
- 1 **Bluetooth functions**
  - 2 **List of the paired peripherals**
    - 3 Connect
    - 3 Disconnect
    - 3 Delete
    - 3 Delete all
    - 3 Cancel
  - 2 **Peripherals search**
  - 2 **Rename radiotelephone**
- 1 **Hang up**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"RADIO" MENU

- 1 **Change Waveband**
  - 2 **FM**
  - 2 **DAB**
  - 2 **AM**
- 1 **Options**
  - 2 **RDS station tracking**
  - 2 **FM/DAB**
- 1 **Audio settings**
  - 2 **Equalizer**
    - 3 None
    - 3 Classical
    - 3 Jazz
    - 3 Rock
    - 3 Techno
    - 3 Vocal
  - 2 **Bass**
  - 2 **Treble**
  - 2 **Loudness**
    - 3 Activated / Deactivated
  - 2 **Distribution**
    - 3 Driver
    - 3 All passengers
  - 2 **Le-Ri balance**
  - 2 **Fr-Re balance**
  - 2 **Auto. Volume**
    - 3 Activated / Deactivated
- 1 **Update radio list**

"MUSIC" MENU

- 1 **Change Media**
  - 2 **CD**
  - 2 **Bluetooth streaming**
  - 2 **USB/iPod**
  - 2 **AUX**
- 1 **Read mode**
  - 2 **Normal**
  - 2 **Random**
  - 2 **Random on all media**
  - 2 **Repetition**
- 1 **Audio settings**
- 1 **Activate / Deactivate AUX input**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"SETUP" MENU

- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 **Choose colour**
    - 3 Harmony
    - 3 Cartography
      - 4 Day mode
      - 4 Night mode
      - 4 Auto Day/Night
  - 2 **Adjust luminosity**
  - 2 **Set date and time**
  - 2 **Select units**
- 1 **Speech synthesis setting**
  - 2 **Guidance instructions volume**
  - 2 **Select male voice/Select female voice**

- 1 **Select language**
  - 2 **Français**
  - 2 **English**
  - 2 **Italiano**
  - 2 **Portuguese**
  - 2 **Español**
  - 2 **Deutsch**
  - 2 **Nederlands**
  - 2 **Turkçe**
  - 2 **Polski**
  - 2 **Русский**
  - 2 **Cestina**
  - 2 **Hrvatski**
  - 2 **Hungarian**

- 1 **Define vehicle parameters***
- 1 **Trip computer**
  - 2 **Alert log**
  - 2 **Status of functions**

* The settings vary according to the vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".
I am unable to enter my post code.	The system only accepts post codes of up to 7 characters.	
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.peugeot.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the information and advice in the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

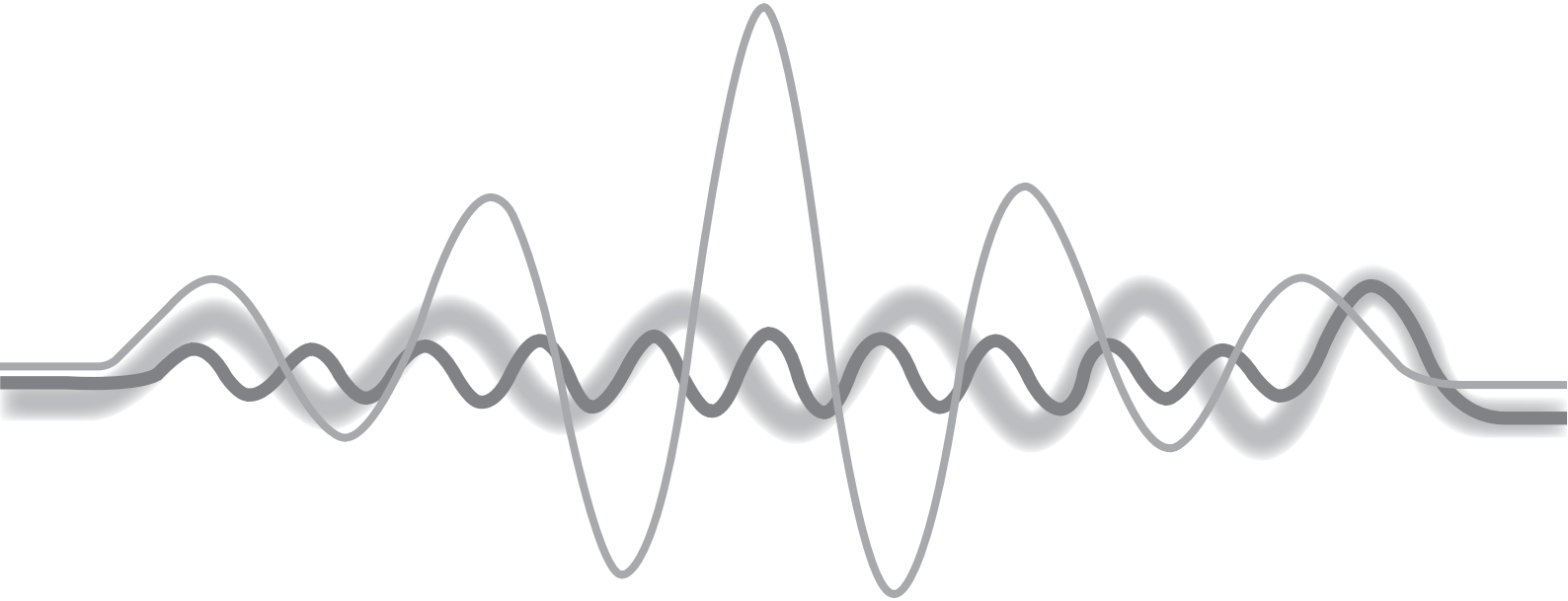
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not read some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).	
The name of the radio station changes.	The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
When modifying the treble and bass setting, the choice of ambience is cancelled.	The selection of an ambience imposes specific treble and bass settings.	Modify the treble and bass settings or choose a musical ambience to obtain the desired sound quality.
When modifying the ambience, the treble and bass settings are cancelled.		
When modifying the balance settings, the "Driver" or "All passengers" setting is cancelled.	The choice of the "Driver" distribution setting imposes specific balance settings.	
When modifying the "Driver" or "All passengers" distribution setting, the balance settings are cancelled.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: economy mode is activated automatically to maintain the state of charge of the vehicle's battery, needed for engine starting. (See the "Energy economy mode" section).	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).





PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5)

Audio system / Bluetooth®

Your PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	330
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	331
03	Main menu	p.	332
04	Audio	p.	333
05	PEUGEOT Connect USB	p.	336
06	Bluetooth	p.	339
07	Screen menu map(s)	p.	342
	Frequently asked questions	p.	347

01 FIRST STEPS

Select source:
radio, audio CD / MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming, AUX.

Select AM / FM wavebands.

Audio settings: front/ rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, loudness, audio ambiences.

Display the list of local stations.
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders (CD / USB).

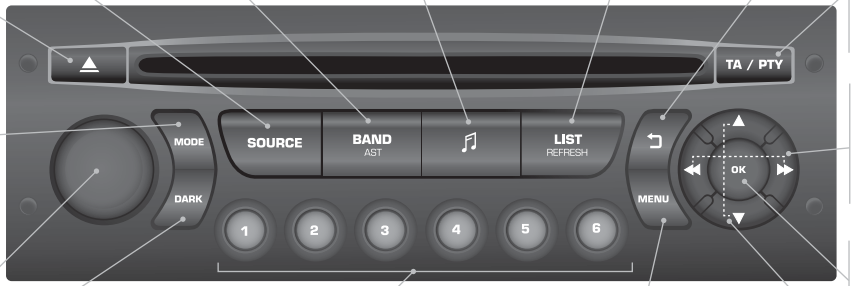
Abandon the current operation.

TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.
Long press: PTY* (radio Programme TYpe) mode.

Eject CD.

Select the screen display mode:
Date, audio functions, trip computer, telephone.

On/off, volume setting.



Automatic frequency search down/up.
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

Confirm.

The DARK button changes the screen display for improved driving comfort at night.
1st press: upper bar only illuminated.
2nd press: black screen.
3rd press: return to standard display.

Buttons 1 to 6:
Select a pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set a station.

Display main menu.

Select next frequency down/up.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist (USB).

* Available according to version.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

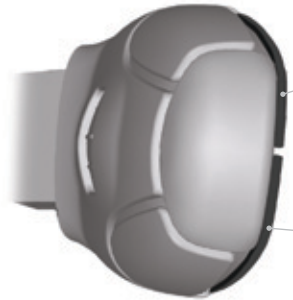
Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the next track.
CD / USB: continuous press: fast forwards play.
Move in the list.

Change audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone main menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the previous track.
CD / USB: continuous press: fast reverse.
Move in the list.

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.
USB: select genre / artist / folder from the classification list.
Select the previous/next item in a menu.



Volume increase.

Volume decrease.

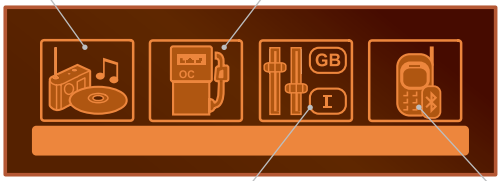
Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

03 MAIN MENU

Screen C

Audio functions
Radio; CD; USB; AUX.

Trip computer
Enter distances; Alerts; State of functions.



Personalisation-configuration
Vehicle parameters; Display; Languages.

Bluetooth®: Telephone - Audio
Pairing; Hands-free kit; Streaming.

Screen A



For an overview of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

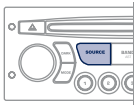
04 AUDIO

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Selecting a station

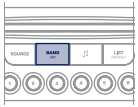
1 

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select the radio.



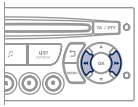
2 

Press the **BAND AST** button to select a waveband.



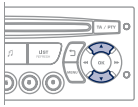
3 

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4 

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

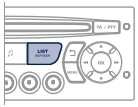






Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).

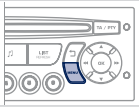
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

1 

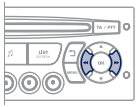
Press the **MENU** button.



2 

Select "**Audio functions**".

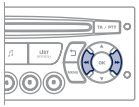
Press **OK**.



3 

Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

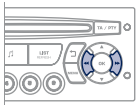
Press **OK**.



4 

Select "**Activate RDS**".

Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.





In "**Radio**" mode, press **OK** directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.

!

RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

04 AUDIO

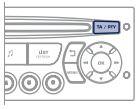
Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1



Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.

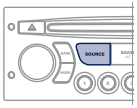
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.

Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

1



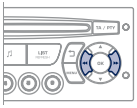
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

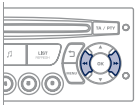


Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Playing an MP3 CD compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

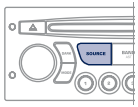
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1 

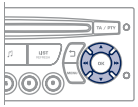
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



2 

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

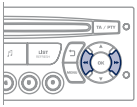
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

Using the PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) and heard via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.



3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



Connecting a USB memory stick

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only) and .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression).

Certain playlist formats are supported (.m3u, ...)

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device.

The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* Depending on vehicle.

05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

Using the PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

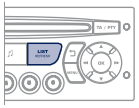
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.

Select by Folder / Artist / Genre / Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



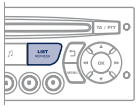




Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.

Navigate through the list using the left/ right and up/down buttons.

Confirm the selection by pressing OK.

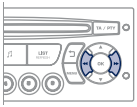


3



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track on the classification list currently being played.

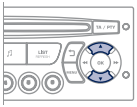
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



Connecting an Apple® player via the USB port

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.

!

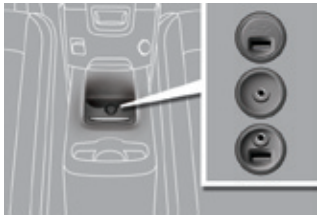
Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

1

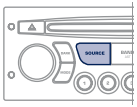
Connect the portable device (MP3 player, …) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).



2



Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **AUX**.



First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

Adjusting the volume of the auxiliary source

1

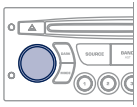
First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



06 BLUETOOTH

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

Screen C

(Available according to model and version)

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth device used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

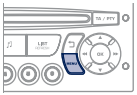
Go to www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



2 

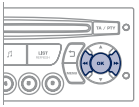
Press the **MENU** button.



3 

In the menu, select:

- "**Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**"
- "**Bluetooth configuration**"
- "**Perform a Bluetooth search**"



4 A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

The "**Telephone**" menu permits access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**"*, "**Calls list**", "**Consult the paired equipment**".

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.

Confirm by pressing **OK**.



8 A message in the screen indicates the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with **OK**.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9 A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.

The directory and the call list can be accessed after the necessary synchronisation period.

06 BLUETOOTH

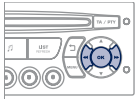
Receiving a call

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

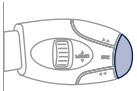
2 

Select the **YES** tab on the display using the buttons.

Confirm by pressing **OK**.



Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.



Making a call

1 From the "**Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**" menu.

Select "**Manage the telephone call**".

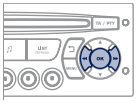
Select "**Call**".

Or

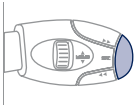
Select "**Calls list**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".



2 Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.



Or

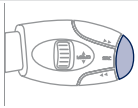
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



06 BLUETOOTH

Ending a call

1 During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.



Confirm with **OK** to end the call.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

1 Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section.



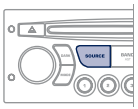
2 Select in the "**Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**" menu the telephone to be connected.

The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3 

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE** button*.

Control of tracks to be played is via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls**. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.



* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

** If the telephone supports the function.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen A

Main function

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**

- 1 **Radio-CD**
  - 2 **RDS options**
  - 2 **REG mode**
  - 2 **CD repeat**
  - 2 **Shuffle play**

- 1 **Vehicle config***
  - 2 **R wiper in rev**
  - 2 **Guide lighting**

* The settings vary according to the trim level of the vehicle.

- 1 **Options**
- 2 **Diagnostic**
  - 3 View
  - 3 Abandon

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



- 1 **Units**
  - 2 **Temperature: °Celsius / °Fahrenheit**
  - 2 **Fuel consumption: KM/L - L/100 - MPG**

- 1 **Display adjust**
  - 2 **Year**
  - 2 **Month**
  - 2 **Day**
  - 2 **Hour**
  - 2 **Minutes**
  - 2 **12 H/24 H mode**

- 1 **Language**
  - 2 **Français**
  - 2 **Italiano**
  - 2 **Nederlands**
  - 2 **Português**
  - 2 **Português do Brasil**
  - 2 **Deutsch**
  - 2 **English**
  - 2 **Español**
  - 2 **Čeština**
  - 2 **Hrvatski**
  - 2 **Magyar**

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen C

Press the **OK** dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.



Radio

1 **activate / deactivate RDS**

1 **activate / deactivate REG mode**

1 **activate / deactivate radiotext**

CD / MP3 CD

1 **activate / deactivate Intro**

1 **activate / deactivate track repeat** (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 **activate / deactivate random play** (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 **activate / deactivate track repeat** (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

1 **activate / deactivate random play** (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen C

Pressing the **MENU** button displays:



- 1 **Audio functions**
- 2 **Audio functions**
  - 3 FM preferences
    - 4 Alternative frequencies (RDS)
  - 3 Activate / deactivate
    - 4 Regional mode (REG)
  - 3 Activate / deactivate
    - 4 Radio-text information (RDTXT)

- 2 **Activate / deactivate**
  - 3 Play modes
    - 4 Album repeat (RPT)
  - 3 Activate / deactivate
    - 4 Track random play (RDM)
  - 4 Activate / deactivate

- 1 **Trip computer**
- 2 **Enter distance to destination**
  - 3 Distance: x miles
- 2 **Warning log**
  - 3 Vehicle diagnosis
- 2 **State of systems**
  - 3 Systems activated or deactivated

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



- **Personalisation-configuration**
  - **Define the vehicle parameters***
  - **Display configuration**
    - Brightness-video adjustment
      - Normal video
      - Inverse video
      - Brightness (- +) adjustment
    - Date and time adjustment
      - Setting the day/month/year
      - Setting the hour/minute
      - Choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
    - Choice of units
      - l/100 km - mpg - km/l
      - °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
  - **Choice of language**

- **Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**
  - **Bluetooth configuration**
    - Connect/Disconnect an equipment
    - Telephone function
    - Audio Streaming function
      - Consult the paired equipment
      - Delete a paired equipment
      - Perform a Bluetooth search
  - **Call**
    - Calls list
      - Directory
  - **Manage the telephone call**
    - Terminate the current call
    - Activate secret mode

* The settings vary according to vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

Accessories 256
Accessory socket, 12V.... 99, 102, 108, 109, 113
Access to the 3rd row 75
Additive, AdBlue.... 23, 204-211
Additive, Diesel 201, 202
Adjusting headlamps 89
Adjusting head restraints 70, 77
Adjusting seat belt height 139
Adjusting the date 33, 35, 38, 40
Adjusting the steering wheel 81
Adjusting the time 33, 35, 38, 40
Advice on driving 147
Airbags 26, 143
Airbags, curtain....145, 146
Airbags, front....143, 146
Airbags, lateral....145, 146
Air conditioning 12
Air conditioning, digital 61, 65
Air conditioning, manual 61, 62
Air vents 60
Alarm 51
Anti-pinch 53, 106
Anti-theft 50, 148
Armrest, rear 109
Assistance call 270
Audible warning 135
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 314, 341
Audio systems....273, 329
Automatic illumination of headlamps 83
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 135
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers....94
Auxiliary socket....101, 315, 338

B

Battery....202, 244-246
Battery, charging....246
Battery, remote control 49, 50
Blind for panoramic sunroof....106
Blinds....114
BlueHDi....179, 195, 204
Bluetooth (hands-free)....296, 339
Bluetooth (telephone)....296, 339
Bonnet....196
Bonnet stay 196
Boot 58
Boot lamp 98
Brake discs....203
Brake lamps 234
Brake pads 203
Braking, dynamic emergency 154

C

Capacity, fuel tank 191
CD 311, 334
CD, MP3....311, 334, 335
Central locking 47, 56
Centre console....101
Changing a bulb 231-236
Changing a fuse....237-243
Changing a wheel 212, 223
Changing a wiper blade 95, 248
Changing the remote control battery....49
Checking levels.... 199-201
Checking the engine oil level....30, 199
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit)....219
Checks 197-203
Checks, routine....202, 203
Child lock....54, 134
Children....115-134, 142, 144
Child seats 115, 116, 120, 122, 128
Child seats, conventional....122, 123
Child seats, ISOFIX 128
Closing the boot 58
Closing the doors 55
Cold climate screen 255
Colour screen, retractable 41
Concertina boards 76
Configuration, vehicle.... 32, 34, 36, 39, 40, 344
Connectors, audio....101, 315, 338
Control, electric windows....53
Control for panoramic sunroof blind....106
Control stalk, lighting 82-84
Control stalk, wipers 91-93
Coolant level 27, 201
Coolant temperature indicator 27
Courtesy lamps 96
Cover, load space 108, 109
Cruise control....166
Cup holder....99, 108, 109

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) 308, 309
Date (setting).... 33, 35, 38, 40
Daytime running lamps....86
Deactivating ESP....138

Deactivating the passenger airbag.....144
Deadlocking 47
Defrosting..... 63, 64, 65, 79
Demisting 63, 64, 65, 79
Dials and gauges 14
Diesel 193
Dimensions 267
Dipped beam..... 82, 231-233
Dipstick.....30, 199
Direction indicators.....135, 231, 232, 234
Display screen, instrument panel 15, 179
Display screen, multifunction (with audio system)..... 34, 36, 39
Display screen, multifunction (without audio system).....32
Distance alert.....160
Doors.....55
Doors emergency control 57
Door pockets.....99
Driving economically.....12
Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... 22, 137, 154

E

Eco-driving 12
Eco-driving (advice).....12
Economy mode 247
Electronic gearbox 170
Electronic stability control (ESC).....136
Emergency boot release.....59
Emergency call 270
Emergency warning lamps 135
Emissions control system, SCR 24, 204
Energy economy mode.....247
Engine compartment 197, 198
Engine compartment fusebox 241
Engine, Diesel..... 193, 195, 198, 261, 263, 266
Engine, petrol..... 193, 197, 258-260
Environment.....12, 50, 64, 183, 201, 211, 246
ESC/ASR.....136

F

Filling with fuel 191, 193, 194
Filter, air 202
Filter, oil.....202
Filter, particle 201, 202
Filter, passenger compartment.....202
Fitting a wheel.....228
Fitting roof bars.....254
Fittings, boot 108, 109
Flap, fuel filler.....194
Flashing indicators.....135
Floor, concertina.....108, 109
Foglamps, front.....84, 231, 233
Foglamps, rear..... 84, 234, 235
Folding the rear seats 73, 75, 76
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors 79
Front seats 68, 69, 72
Fuel.....12, 191, 193
Fuel consumption.....12, 42
Fuel filler cap.....191
Fuel filler flap.....191
Fuel gauge 14, 191
Fuel tank.....191, 194
Fusebox, dashboard 238
Fuses.....237

G

Gearbox, automatic 12, 14, 18, 151, 154, 155, 175, 203, 246
Gearbox, electronic 12, 18, 151, 154, 170, 180, 203
Gearbox, manual 12, 151, 154, 155, 169, 180, 203
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 175
Gear lever, electronic gearbox 170
Gear lever, manual gearbox 169
Gear shift indicator 179
Glove box 99, 100
G.P.S. 270
Grab handles 99
Guidance.....279
Guide-me-home.....86, 87

H

Halogen headlamps.....231, 232
Hazard warning lamps.....135
Headlamp adjustment.....89
Headlamps, automatic illumination 87
Headlamps, dipped beam.....82, 231, 232
Headlamps, directional 90, 231

Headlamps, main beam 82, 231, 232
Headlamp wash 93
Headlamp wash reservoir 201
Head restraints, front 70
Head restraints, rear 77
Head-up display 158, 163, 166
Heated seats 71
Heating 60, 62, 65
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel 81
High load retaining net 111
Hill start assist 155
Hooks 109, 113
Horn 135

I

Identification plates 268
Ignition 148
Immobiliser, electronic 50, 148
Indicator, engine oil level 30, 199
Indicator lamps, operation 16-18
Indicators, direction 135
Inflating tyres 12, 268
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit) 219
Input, auxiliary 336
Inputs for audio system 101, 315, 338
Instrument panels 14
Instrument panel screen 15
Intelligent Traction Control 136
Interior fittings 99
Interior mood lighting 97
ISOFIX mountings 127

J

Jack 212, 226
JACK socket 101, 315, 338
Jump starting 245

K

Keeping children safe 115-134, 142, 144
Key with remote control 46-50, 148
Kit, hands-free 296, 339
Kit, temporary puncture repair 214

L

Labels, identification 268
Lamps, warning and indicator 16-26
LED daytime running lamps 86, 231, 232
Level, AdBlue® additive 204
Level, brake fluid 200
Level, Diesel additive 201, 202
Level, engine oil 30, 199
Level, headlamp wash 93, 201
Level, power steering fluid 200
Levels and checks 197-201
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 231, 232
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 231-236
Lighting dimmer 31
Lighting, directional 90
Lighting, guide-me home 86, 87
Lighting, interior 96, 97
Lighting, welcome 86, 88
Loading 12, 78, 254
Load reduction mode 247
Load space cover 110
Locating your vehicle 48
Locking from the inside 56
Locking the boot 47
Locking the doors 47
Long objects, transporting 72, 78
Low fuel level 22, 191
Luggage retaining net 112

M

Main beam 82, 231, 233
Maintenance, routine 12
Map reading lamps 96
Markings, identification 268
Mat 102
Menu, main 332
Mirror, rear view 80

Mirrors, door....79
Misfuel prevention....194
Modularity, seats....78
Mountings for ISOFIX seats....127
MP3 CD....311, 335
Multimedia, rear....101, 104

N

Navigation....279
Net....110
Number plate lamps....235, 236

O

Oil change....199
Oil consumption....199
OIl, engine....30, 199
Opening the bonnet....196
Opening the boot....58
Opening the doors....55
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind....106
Opening the retractable screen....41
Operation indicator lamps....16-18

P

Paint colour code....268
Panoramic glass sunroof....106
Parking brake, electric....21, 151-157, 203
Parking sensors, audible and visual....185
Parking sensors, front....185
Parking sensors, rear....185
Parking space sensor....188
Particle filter....196, 201
PEUGEOT Connect Assistance....270
PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)....39, 273
PEUGEOT Connect Packs....270
PEUGEOT Connect SOS....270
PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5)....36, 329
Player, MP3 CD....311, 334, 335
Players, music media....310
Port, USB....101, 315, 336
Pre-tensioning seat belts....142
Priming the fuel system....195
Protecting children....115-134, 142, 144
Puncture....214, 220

R

Radio....305, 333
Range....42
Range, AdBlue....206
Reading lamps, rear....96
Rear foglamp....84, 234, 235
Rear screen (demisting)....64, 79
Recharging the battery....246
Reduction of electrical load....247
Regeneration of the particle filter....202
Reinitialising the electric windows....54
Reinitialising the remote control....49
Reminder, key in ignition....150
Remote control....46-50
Removable screen (snow shield)....255
Removing a wheel....226
Removing the mat....102
Replacing bulbs....231-236
Replacing fuses....237-243
Replacing the air filter....202
Replacing the oil filter....202
Replacing the passenger compartment filter....202
Replacing wiper blades....95, 248
Resetting the service indicator....29
Resetting the trip recorder....31
Rev counter....14
Reversing camera....187
Reversing lamp....234
Rigid panel....75
Risk areas (update)....284
Roof bars....254
Routine checks....202, 203
Running out of fuel (Diesel)....195

S

Safety, children....115-134, 142, 144
Satellite navigation system....39, 279
Screen, colour and mapping....39, 40, 277, 318

Screen menu map..... 318, 342, 344
Screen, monochrome A..... 32, 34, 43, 342
Screen, monochrome C..... 36, 44, 344
Screenwash fluid level.....93
Screenwash, front.....93
Screenwash, rear.....92
Screen-wash reservoir.....201
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 204
Seat adjustment.....68, 69, 73
Seat belts 109, 139, 141, 142
Seat configurations.....78
Seats, electric 69
Seats, rear.....73, 75, 76
Serial number, vehicle.....268
Service indicator 28
Servicing 12
Settings, equipment..... 32, 34, 36, 39, 40, 344
Short-cut menus 278
Sidelamps 82, 231, 232, 234
Side repeater 233
Snow chains.....230
Socket, 12 volt accessory 99, 102, 113, 108, 109
Sockets, audio 101, 315, 336
Spare wheel 229
Speed limiter 163
Speedometer 14
Spotlamps, side 97
Starting the engine 148
Starting using another battery.....245
Steering mounted controls, audio 276, 331
Stop & Start..... 18, 42, 63, 67, 180, 192, 196, 202, 244
Storage.....99, 101, 103, 108, 109
Storage box.....100
Storage drawer 103
Storage wells 108, 109
Stowing rings 108, 109
Sun visor 99, 100
Switching off the engine 148
Synchronising the remote control 49
Synthesiser, voice.....290
System, navigation.....279

T

Table of weights 259, 260, 263, 266
Tables, aircraft 103
Tables of engines.....258, 261
Tables of fuses.....237
Tank, AdBlue® additive 204, 209
Tank, fuel.....194
Technical data..... 258-266
Telephone 295, 339
Temperature control for heated seats.....71
Temperature, coolant.....27
Three flashes function (direction indicators).....135
Third brake lamp 235, 236
Time (setting) 33, 35, 38, 40
TMC (Traffic info) 293
Tools.....212, 223
Total distance recorder 31
Towbar.....252
Towed loads 259, 260, 263, 266
Towing another vehicle 249
Traction control (ASR) 22, 137
Traffic information (TA) 294, 307, 334
Traffic information (TMC)..... 293, 294
Trailer 252
Trip computer 42-44
Trip distance recorder.....31
Tyre pressures 268
Tyres.....12
Tyre under-inflation detection..... 26, 183, 229

U

Under floor storage..... 113
Under-inflation (detection)..... 26, 183, 229
Unlocking 46
Unlocking from the inside 56
Unlocking the boot 46
Unlocking the doors.....46
Updating risk areas.....284
UREA 204, 205
USB 101, 315, 338

V

Vehicle identification....268
Vanity mirror....100
Ventilation....60, 61, 62, 67

W

Warning lamps....16-26
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system....24
Warning lamp, Service....20
Washing (advice)....187
Weights....259, 260, 263, 266
Wheel, spare....212, 223
Window controls....53
Wiper control stalk....94
Wiper, rear....92
Wipers....91, 94
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive....91

X

Xenon headlamps....231

! Labels are fitted in various areas of your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by PEUGEOT may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special diagnostic tool required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

Printed in the EU

Anglais

06-15

PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS
Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14
Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : http://www.peugeot.com
Société Anonyme au capital de 172 711 770 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z

